# TOPNOTE B



THIRD EDITION

with WORKBOOK

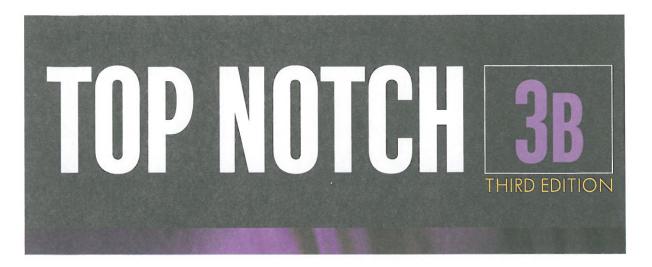
**JOAN SASLOW** ALLEN ASCHER



ALWAYS LEARNING

**PEARSON** 

dehkhodaedu.com



#### ENGLISH FOR TODAY'S WORLD

with Workbook

JOAN SASLOW ALLEN ASCHER

With Top Notch Pop Songs and Karaoke by Rob Morsberger

# Contents

Learning Objectives for 3A and 3B
UNIT 6Life Plans.62UNIT 7Holiday Traditions.74UNIT 8Inventions and Discoveries.86UNIT 9Controversial Issues.98UNIT 10Beautiful World.110
Reference Charts
WORKBOOK         UNIT 6       W55         UNIT 7       W67         UNIT 8       W78         UNIT 9       W88         UNIT 10       W96         About the Authors       last page

### LEARNING OBJECTIVES

	COMMUNICATION GOALS	VOCABULARY	GRAMMAR
Make Small Talk PAGE 2	<ul> <li>Make small talk</li> <li>Describe a busy schedule</li> <li>Develop your cultural awareness</li> <li>Discuss how culture changes over time</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Asking about proper address</li> <li>Intensifiers</li> <li>Manners and etiquette</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Tag questions: use, form, and common errors</li> <li>The past perfect: Statements</li> <li>GRAMMAR BOOSTER</li> <li>Tag questions: short answers</li> <li>Verb usage: present and past: overview</li> </ul>
Health Matters PAGE 14	Show concern and offer help     Make a medical or dental appointment     Discuss types of treatments     Talk about medications	Dental emergencies     Describing symptoms     Medical procedures     Types of medical treatments     Medications	Drawing conclusions with <u>must</u> Will be able to; Modals <u>may</u> and <u>might</u> GRAMMAR BOOSTER  Other ways to draw conclusions: <u>probably</u> and <u>most likely</u> Expressing possibility with <u>maybe</u>
Getting Things Done PAGE 26	Offer a solution     Discuss how long a service will take     Evaluate the quality of service     Plan an event	Ways to indicate acceptance     Services     Planning and running an event	<ul> <li>The causative</li> <li>The passive causative</li> </ul> GRAMMAR BOOSTER <ul> <li>Causative make to indicate obligation</li> <li>Let to indicate permission</li> <li>Causative have: common errors</li> <li>The passive causative: the by phrase</li> </ul>
Reading for Pleasure	<ul> <li>Recommend a book</li> <li>Ask about an article</li> <li>Describe your reading habits</li> <li>Discuss online reading</li> </ul>	Genres of books     Ways to describe a book     Some ways to enjoy reading	Noun clauses: usage, form, and common errors Noun clauses: Embedded questions Form and common errors  GRAMMAR BOOSTER Verbs that can be followed by clauses with that Adjectives that can be followed by clauses with that Embedded questions with whether usage and common errors punctuation
Natural Disasters PAGE 50	Convey a message Tell someone about the news Describe natural disasters Prepare for an emergency	Severe weather and other natural disasters     Reactions to news     Adjectives of severity     Emergency preparations and supplies	Indirect speech: Imperatives     Indirect speech: Say and tell—tense changes  GRAMMAR BOOSTER     Direct speech: punctuation rules     Indirect speech: optional tense changes

CONVERSATION STRATEGIES	LISTENING / PRONUNCIATION	READING	WRITING
<ul> <li>Talk about the weather to begin a conversation with someone you don't know</li> <li>Use question tags to encourage someone to make small talk</li> <li>Ask about how someone wants to be addressed</li> <li>Answer a <u>Do you mind</u> question with <u>Absolutely not</u> to indicate agreement</li> <li>Say <u>That was nothing!</u> to indicate that something even more surprising happened</li> <li>Use <u>Wow!</u> to indicate that you are impressed</li> </ul>	Listening Skills  Listen for main ideas  Listen to summarize  Confirm the correct paraphrases  Pronunciation  Intonation of tag questions	Texts  A business meeting e-mail and agenda  An online article about formal dinner etiquette of the past  A survey about culture change  A photo story  Skills/Strategies  Apply prior knowledge  Draw conclusions  Understand from context	Task  Write a formal and an informal e-mail message  WRITING BOOSTER  Formal e-mail etiquette
<ul> <li>Introduce disappointing information with I'm sorry, but</li> <li>Show concern with Is there anything wrong? and That must be awful</li> <li>Begin a question of possibility with I wonder if</li> <li>Use Let's see to indicate you are checking for something</li> <li>Confirm an appointment with I'll / We'll see you then</li> <li>Express emphatic thanks with I really appreciate it</li> </ul>	Listening Skills  Listen to activate vocabulary  Listen for details  Auditory discrimination  Pronunciation  Intonation of lists	Texts  A travel tips website about dental emergencies  A brochure about choices in medical treatments  A medicine label  A patient information form  A photo story  Skills/Strategies  Understand from context  Relate to personal experience  Draw conclusions	Task  Write an essay comparing two types of medical treatments  WRITING BOOSTER  Comparisons and contrasts
<ul> <li>Use <u>I'm sorry, but</u> and an excuse to politely turn down a request</li> <li>Indicate acceptance of someone's excuse with <u>No problem</u>.</li> <li>Suggest an alternative with <u>Maybe you could</u></li> <li>Soften an almost certain <u>no</u> with <u>That might be difficult</u></li> <li>Use <u>Actually,</u> to indicate willingness to reconsider</li> </ul>	Listening Skills  Listen to confirm  Listen for main ideas  Listen to summarize  Pronunciation  Emphatic stress to express enthusiasm	Texts  A survey about procrastination  A business article about how to keep customers happy  A photo story  Skills/Strategies  Infer point of view  Activate language from a text	Task  Write an essay expressing a point of view about procrastination  WRITING BOOSTER  Supporting an opinion with personal examples
<ul> <li>Use <u>Actually</u> to show appreciation for someone's interest in a topic</li> <li>Soften a question with <u>Could you tell me?</u></li> <li>Indicate disappointment with <u>Too bad</u></li> <li>Use <u>I'm dying to</u> to indicate extreme interest</li> <li>Say <u>Are you sure?</u> to confirm someone's willingness to do something</li> </ul>	Listening Skills  Listen to take notes  Listen to infer a speaker's point of view and support your opinion  Pronunciation  Sentence stress in short answers with so	Texts  An online bookstore website  A questionnaire about reading habits  A magazine article about the Internet's influence on our habits  A photo story  Skills/Strategies  Recognize point of view  Understand meaning from context	Task  Write a summary and review of something you've read  WRITING BOOSTER  Summarizing
<ul> <li>Use <u>I would, but</u> to politely turn down an offer</li> <li>Say <u>Will do</u> to agree to a request for action</li> <li>Use <u>Well</u> to begin providing requested information</li> <li>Say <u>What a shame</u> to show empathy for a misfortune</li> <li>Introduce reassuring contrasting information with <u>But</u></li> <li>Say <u>Thank goodness for that</u> to indicate relief</li> </ul>	Listening Skills  Listen for main ideas  Listen for details  Paraphrase  Listen to infer meaning  Pronunciation  Direct and indirect speech: Rhythm	Texts  News headlines  A textbook article about earthquakes  Statistical charts  A photo story  Skills/Strategies  Paraphrase  Confirm facts  Identify cause and effect  Interpret data from a chart	Task Write a procedure for how to prepare for an emergency WRITING BOOSTER Organizing detail statements by order of importance

	COMMUNICATION GOALS	VOCABULARY	GRAMMAR
Life Plans PAGE 62	<ul> <li>Explain a change of intentions and plans</li> <li>Express regrets about past actions</li> <li>Discuss skills, abilities, and qualifications</li> <li>Discuss factors that promote success</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Reasons for changing plans</li> <li>Qualifications for work or study</li> </ul>	Expressing intentions and plans that changed: Was / were going to and would Perfect modals  GRAMMAR BOOSTER Expressing the future: review The future with will and be going to: review Regrets about the past: Wish + the past perfect Should have and ought to have
Holidays and Traditions PAGE 74	Wish someone a good holiday     Ask about local customs     Exchange information about holidays     Explain wedding traditions	<ul> <li>Types of holidays</li> <li>Ways to commemorate a holiday</li> <li>Some ways to exchange good wishes on holidays</li> <li>Getting married: events and people</li> </ul>	Adjective clauses with subject relative pronouns who and that  Usage, form, and common errors  Adjective clauses with object relative pronouns who, whom, and that  Form and common errors  GRAMMAR BOOSTER  Adjective clauses: common errors  Reflexive pronouns  By + reflexive pronouns  Reciprocal pronouns: each other and one another  Adjective clauses: who and whom in formal English
Inventions and Discoveries	<ul> <li>Describe technology</li> <li>Take responsibility for a mistake</li> <li>Describe new inventions</li> <li>Discuss the impact of inventions / discoveries</li> </ul>	Describing manufactured products     Descriptive adjectives	The unreal conditional: Review and expansion The past unreal conditional Usage, form, and common errors  GRAMMAR BOOSTER Real and unreal conditionals: review Clauses after wish Unless in conditional sentences The unreal conditional: variety of forms
Controversial Issues PAGE 98	<ul> <li>Talk about politics</li> <li>Discuss controversial issues politely</li> <li>Propose solutions to global problems</li> <li>Debate the pros and cons of issues</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Political terminology</li> <li>A continuum of political and social beliefs</li> <li>Some controversial issues</li> <li>Ways to agree or disagree</li> <li>How to debate an issue politely</li> </ul>	Non-count nouns that represent abstract ideas Verbs followed by objects and infinitives  GRAMMAR BOOSTER  Count and non-count nouns: review and extension Gerunds and infinitives: form and usage usage after certain verbs
Beautiful World PAGE 110	<ul> <li>Describe a geographical location</li> <li>Warn about a possible risk</li> <li>Describe a natural setting</li> <li>Discuss solutions to global warming</li> </ul>	Geographical features Compass directions Ways to recommend or criticize a place Ways to describe risks Dangerous animals and insects Geographic nouns and adjectives Describing natural features Energy and the environment	Prepositional phrases of geographical places Too + adjective and infinitive  GRAMMAR BOOSTER Prepositions of place: more usage Proper nouns: capitalization Proper nouns: use of the Infinitives with enough

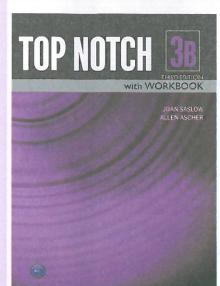
Reference Charts page	122
Grammar Booster	135

CONVERSATION STRATEGIES	LISTENING / PRONUNCIATION	READING	WRITING
<ul> <li>Say No kidding! to indicate delight or surprise</li> <li>Say How come? to ask for a reason</li> <li>Express a regret with I should have</li> <li>Use You never know to reassure someone</li> <li>Accept another's reassurance with True</li> </ul>	Listening Skills  Listen for details  Listen to classify information  Listen to infer a speaker's motives  Pronunciation  Reduction of have in perfect modals	Texts  Career and skills inventories  A magazine article with tips for effective work habits  A photo story  Skills/Strategies  Understand from context  Confirm content	Task  Write a short autobiography  WRITING BOOSTER  Dividing an essay into topics
<ul> <li>Show friendliness by wishing someone a good holiday</li> <li>Reciprocate good wishes with Thanks! Same to you!</li> <li>Preface a potentially sensitive question with Do you mind if I ask you</li> <li>Ask about socially appropriate behavior in order to avoid embarrassment</li> <li>Express appreciation with Thanks. That's really helpful</li> </ul>	Listening Skills  Listen for main ideas  Listen for details  Infer information  Pronunciation  "Thought groups"	Texts     Factoids on holidays     A magazine article about holidays around the world     Proverbs about weddings     A photo story Skills/Strategies     Scan for facts     Compare and contrast     Relate to personal experience	Task  Write a detailed description of two holidays  WRITING BOOSTER  Descriptive details
<ul> <li>Congratulate someone for a major new purchase</li> <li>Apologize for lateness and provide an explanation</li> <li>Indicate regret for a mistake by beginning an explanation with I'm ashamed to say</li> <li>Reduce another's self-blame with That can happen to anyone and No harm done</li> </ul>	Listening Skills  Listen to draw conclusions  Listen to summarize  Listen to infer meaning  Infer the correct adjective  Pronunciation  Contractions with 'd in spoken English	Texts Case studies of poor purchasing decisions A book excerpt about antibiotics Factoids on famous inventions A photo story Skills/Strategies Find supporting details Understand from context	Task  Write an essay about the historical impact of an important invention or discovery  WRITING BOOSTER  Summary statements
<ul> <li>Ask for permission when bringing up a topic that might be controversial</li> <li>Use So to begin a question clarifying someone's statement</li> <li>Politely indicate unwillingness with No offense, but</li> <li>Apologize for refusing with hope you don't mind</li> <li>Use How do you feel about to invite someone's opinion</li> <li>Offer an explanation for one's opinion.</li> <li>Use Well, to introduce a different point of view</li> </ul>	Listening Skills Infer a speaker's political and social beliefs Infer a speaker's point of view Listen to summarize Auditory discrimination Pronunciation Stress to emphasize meaning	Texts A self-test of political literacy A textbook introduction to global problems A photo story Skills/Strategies Activate language from a text Critical thinking	Task  Write an essay presenting the two sides of a controversial issue  WRITING BOOSTER  Contrasting ideas
<ul> <li>Show interest in someone's plans by asking follow-up questions</li> <li>Indicate possible intention with I've been thinking about it</li> <li>Qualify a positive response with Sure, but</li> <li>Elaborate further information using Well,</li> <li>Express gratitude for a warning</li> </ul>	Listening Skills  Listen for main ideas  Listen to summarize  Listen for details  Infer a speaker's point of view  Pronunciation  Voiced and voiceless th	Texts  Maps  An online article about ways to curb global warming  A photo story  Skills/Strategies  Interpret maps  Understand from context  Critical thinking  Summarize	Task  Write a geographic description of your country, state, or province  WRITING BOOSTER  Organizing by spatial relations

Writing Booster page	150
Top Notch Pop Lyricspage	154

#### TO THE TEACHER

What is *Top Notch*? *Top Notch* is a four-level communicative course that prepares adults and young adults to interact successfully and confidently with both native and non-native speakers of English.



#### The goal of **Top Notch** is to make English unforgettable through:

- Multiple exposures to new language
- · Numerous opportunities to practice it
- Deliberate and intensive recycling

The *Top Notch* course has two beginning levels—*Top Notch Fundamentals* for true beginners and *Top Notch 1* for false beginners. *Top Notch* is benchmarked to the Global Scale of English and is correlated to the Can-do Statements of the Common European Framework of Reference.

Each full level of *Top Notch* contains material for 60–90 hours of classroom instruction.

NEW This third edition of *Top Notch* includes these new features: Extra Grammar Exercises, digital full-color Vocabulary Flash Cards, Conversation Activator videos, and Pronunciation Coach videos.

### **Award-Winning Instructional Design\***

#### Daily confirmation of progress

Each easy-to-follow two-page lesson begins with a clearly stated practical communication goal closely aligned to the Common European Framework's Can-do Statements. All activities are integrated with the goal, giving vocabulary and grammar meaning and purpose. Now You Can activities ensure that students achieve each goal and confirm their progress in every class session.

#### Explicit vocabulary and grammar

Clear captioned picture-dictionary illustrations with accompanying audio take the guesswork out of meaning and pronunciation. Grammar presentations containing both rules and examples clarify form, meaning, and use. The unique Recycle this Language feature continually puts known words and grammar in front of students' eyes as they communicate, to make sure language remains active.

#### High-frequency social language

Twenty memorable conversation models provide appealing natural social language that students can carry "in their pockets" for use in real life. Rigorous controlled and free discussion activities systematically stimulate recycling of social language, ensuring that it's not forgotten.

#### \* Top Notch is the recipient of the Association of Educational Publishers' Distinguished Achievement Award.

#### Linguistic and cultural fluency

**Top Notch** equips students to interact with people from different language backgrounds by including authentic accents on the audio. Conversation Models, Photo Stories, and cultural fluency activities prepare students for social interactions in English with people from unfamiliar cultures.

#### Active listening syllabus

All Vocabulary presentations, Pronunciation presentations, Conversation Models, Photo Stories, Listening Comprehension exercises, and Readings are recorded on the audio to help students develop good pronunciation, intonation, and auditory memory. In addition, approximately fifty carefully developed listening tasks at each level of *Top Notch* develop crucial listening comprehension skills such as listen for details, listen for main ideas, listen to activate vocabulary, listen to activate grammar, and listen to confirm information.

We wish you and your students enjoyment and success with **Top Notch 3**. We wrote it for you.

Joan Saslow and Allen Ascher

#### COMPONENTS

#### **ActiveTeach**

Maximize the impact of your *Top Notch* lessons. This digital tool provides an interactive classroom experience that can be used with or without an interactive whiteboard (IWB). It includes a full array of digital and printable features.

#### For class presentation . . .

- NEW Conversation
  Activator videos: increase
  students' confidence in oral
  communication
- NEW Pronunciation Coach videos: facilitate clear and fluent oral expression
- NEW Extra Grammar
  Exercises: ensure mastery
  of grammar
- NEW Digital Full-Color Vocabulary
  Flash Cards: accelerate retention of
  new vocabulary

# | Section of the description of the control of the

#### For planning . . .

- A Methods Handbook for a communicative classroom
- Detailed timed lesson plans for each two-page lesson
- Complete answer keys, audio scripts, and video scripts

#### For extra support . . .

- Hundreds of extra printable activities, with teaching notes
- · Top Notch Pop language exercises

#### For assessment . . .

 Ready-made unit and review achievement tests with options to edit, add, or delete items.

#### PLUS

- Clickable Audio: instant access to the complete classroom audio program
- Top Notch Pop Songs and Karaoke: original songs for additional language practice

#### Workbook

Lesson-by-lesson written exercises to accompany the Student's Book

# Full-Course Placement Tests

#### Teacher's Edition and Lesson Planner

- Detailed interleaved lesson plans, language and culture notes, answer keys, and more
- · Also accessible in digital form in the ActiveTeach

# UNIT Life Plans

- 1 Explain a change of intentions or plans.
- 2 Express regrets about past actions.
- 3 Discuss skills, abilities, and qualifications.
- 4 Discuss factors that promote success.

# **PREVIEW**

#### What's the best career for you? Take the preference inventory to see which fields might be a good match for you. Check the activities you like (or would like) to do. work on experiments in a science laboratory write songs manage a department of a large business corporation repair furniture be a doctor and care for sick people design the stage scenery for a play teach adults how to read study a company's sales restore antique cars teach science to young people help families with problems manage a company's sales representatives make clothes to sell interpret X-rays and other medical tests make paintings and sculptures help couples with their new babies start my own business build houses Write the number of check marks you have by each color. Field: [ BUSINESS SCIENCE SOCIAL WORK ARTS

#### **DISCUSSION** Talk about the questions.

- Which field or fields did you have the most check marks in?
- · Were you surprised by your results? Explain.
- · What are some jobs or professions in that field?

B PHOTO STORY Read and listen to a conversation about a career choice.



Charlotte: Dr. Miller, I wonder if I could pick your brain.

Dr. Miller: Sure, Charlotte. What's on your mind?

Charlotte: Well, I always thought I would go to engineering school, but now I'm not so sure anymore.

Dr. Miller: Well, it's not so unusual for a person your age to change her mind . . .



Dr. Miller: I must have changed mine ten times before I settled on medicine! Have you decided on something else?

Charlotte: Well, actually, I've developed an interest in the health field, and since you're a doctor...

Dr. Miller: Are you thinking of medicine?

Charlotte: Not specifically. Something related that doesn't take that long to study . . .



Charlotte: I know there are some good options, but I'm having trouble making up my mind.

Dr. Miller: Well, have you given any thought to becoming a physical therapist? It's a great field. You help people, and there's always a job available.

Charlotte: Hmm. Physical therapy.
I should have thought of that. I'll keep that in mind.

- **C FOCUS ON LANGUAGE** Find the following expressions in the Photo Story. Use the context to help you match the expressions and their meanings.
  - ....... 1 make up one's mind
  - ....... 2 keep something in mind
  - ....... 3 be on one's mind
  - ...... 4 settle on
  - ...... 5 change one's mind
  - ....... 6 pick someone's brain

- a decide to do something else
- **b** remember something
- c think of something
- d decide to do something after considering conflicting choices
- e ask someone about something
- f make a final decision that won't change

#### **SPEAKING**

- A Have you ever changed your mind before settling on something? Check any areas in which you have changed your mind.
  - ☐ a career or job choice
- a flat or other place to live
- a field of study
- ☐ the choice of a school or college

☐ a marriage

□ other .....

**B DISCUSSION** Survey the class. How many classmates checked each box? Discuss the reasons why people changed their plans.



## CONVERSATION MODEL

- A >3:20 Read and listen to a conversation about a change in plans.
  - A: So what are you doing these days?
  - B: Well, I'm in dental school.
  - A: No kidding! I thought you had other plans.
  - B: That's right. I was going to be an artist, but I changed my mind.
  - A: How come?
  - B: Well, it's hard to make a living as a painter!
- B •3.21 RHYTHM AND INTONATION Listen again and repeat. Then practice the Conversation Model with a partner.



#### GRAMMAR Expressing intentions and plans that changed: Was / Were going to and would

Express and ask about past intentions and plans that changed with was / were going to + a base form.

I was going to get married (but I didn't).
Was she going to take the course?

They were going to study art (but they didn't). Were you going to study with Dr. Mellon?

Weren't you going to study law? (Yes, I was. / No, I wasn't.)

Where were they going to work? (In Kuala Lumpur.)

Who was going to teach this class? (My sister was.)

You can also use <u>would</u> (the past of <u>will</u>) + a base form to express plans and intentions that changed, but only in a noun clause following verbs such as <u>thought</u>, <u>believed</u>, or <u>said</u>.

She thought she would be a doctor (but she changed her mind).

We always believed they would get married (but they never did).

They said they would pay for their daughter's studies (but they didn't).

**Note**: You can also use <u>was</u> / <u>were going to</u> in a noun clause after <u>thought</u>, <u>believed</u>, or <u>said</u>.

They said they were going to arrive before noon (but they didn't).

#### Be careful

Don't use would + a base form alone. It must be used in a noun clause. Use was / were going to instead.

She was going to be a doctor. NOT She would be a doctor.

#### GRAMMAR BOOSTER p. 135

- · Expressing the future: review
- The future with will and be going to: review

**GRAMMAR PRACTICE** Write what each person said he or she was going to do.











1. He said he was going to ...

#### **VOCABULARY** Reasons for changing plans

▶ 3:22 Read and listen. Then listen again and repeat.



I wanted to be a pop star, but my tastes changed.



I was going to be an artist, but it's hard to make a living as an artist.



I thought I would be a lawyer, but I didn't pass the



I wanted to become a firefighter, but my family talked me out of it.



I was going to marry George, but I changed my mind.

B	VOCABULARY / GRAMMAR PRACTICE	Complete each sentence, using would and a reason
	from the Vocabulary. Then compare	reasons with a partner.
	1 Laura thought / he / a doctor but	3 We were sure / Bill / go / to the local

- university, but . . .
- 2 I thought / become / an astronaut, but . . .
- 4 Joe always believed / become / a writer, but . . .
- C >3.23 LISTEN TO ACTIVATE VOCABULARY Listen to the conversations. Complete each statement about the decision each person made. Then listen again and use the Vocabulary to write the reason each person changed his or her mind.
  - 1 She wanted to be a ....., but she changed her mind because ......
    - 2 He was going to ...... Jessica, but he didn't because ...... 3 He always thought she would become a ......, but she didn't because ......
    - 4 She was going to ...... a Romanian named Andrei, but she didn't because ......

#### NOW YOU CAN Explain a change of intentions or plans

**NOTEPADDING** On the notepad, write some intentions or plans you had in the past but changed your mind about. Write the reasons for the changes, using the Vocabulary or other reasons.

CONVERSATION ACTIVATOR With a partner, change the Conversation Model, using the information on your notepad. Then change roles.

	for my life:
	for my studies:
	for my career:
_	

- A: So what are you doing these days?
- B: Well, ........
- A: No kidding! I thought you had other plans.
- B: That's right. I was going to ......, but .......
- A: How come?
- B: Well, .........

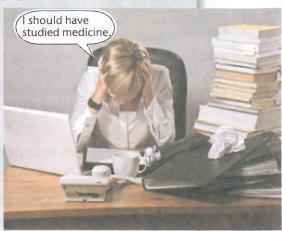
- Ask more questions.
- Explain your choices and decisions.
- · Discuss the future.
- CHANGE PARTNERS Practice the conversation again about other intentions or plans from your notepad.

#### **GRAMMAR** Perfect modals

Use perfect modals to express feelings and beliefs about past actions and events:

- Regrets or judgments: <u>should have</u> + past participle
   I should have studied medicine. (But unfortunately, I didn't.)
   She shouldn't have divorced Sam. (But unfortunately, she did.)
- Possibility: may have / might have + past participle
   I may (OR might) have failed the final exam. It was really hard.
   He may (OR might) not have been able to make a living as a painter.
- Ability (OR possibility): <u>could have</u> + past participle
   He was the driver. He <u>could have prevented</u> the accident.
   The museum was closed, but she <u>couldn't have known</u> that. It's usually open on Tuesdays.
- Certainty: would have + past participle
   You should have gone to Rio. You would have loved it.
   It's good they didn't move to Europe. They wouldn't have been happy there.
- Conclusions: <u>must have</u> + past participle
   Beth isn't here. She <u>must have gone</u> home early.
   (I think that's what happened.)

   They didn't buy the house. The price <u>must not have been</u> acceptable.
   (I think that's the reason.)

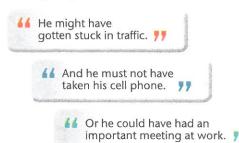


GRAMMAR BOOSTER p. 136
Regrets about the past: wish +
the past perfect; should have and ought to have

- A GRAMMAR PRACTICE Choose the modal that logically completes each sentence. Write that modal and the verb in the perfect modal form.
  - 1 I don't know why she took that job. It ...... the only one available.
  - 2 | architecture, | really good at it. (should OR may) study (must OR would) be

  - 5 Ella still loves big cities. She ...... to the countryside. (must not OR should not) move
- **B** PAIR WORK Provide three possible reasons for each statement. Use <u>may</u> / <u>might have</u>, <u>must have</u>, and <u>could have</u>. Follow the example.

**Example:** John is late for dinner.



- 1 My brother never got married.
- 2 All the classes were canceled today.
- 3 Michael is forty, and he just became a doctor.
- 4 Rachel grew up in New York, but now she lives in São Paulo.
- 5 They had one child, and then they had three more.
- 6 They had their honeymoon in the U.S. instead of in France.

#### VIDEO COACH

#### PRONUNCIATION Reduction of have in perfect modals

/\rebu]\

1 I should Mave married Marie.

/naţəv/

3 We may not have seen it.

/maɪtəv/

2 They might Maye left.

/kʊdəv/

4 She could Mave been on time.

**B** PAIR WORK Take turns reading the sentences with perfect modals in Exercise A. Use correct reduction of <u>have</u>.

#### **CONVERSATION MODEL**

- A \$\infty\$ 3:25 Read and listen to a conversation between two people discussing a regret about the past.
  - A: I should have married Steven.
  - B: Why do you think that?
  - A: Well, I might have had children by now.
  - B: Could be. But you never know. You might not have been happy.
  - A: True.
- B S3:26 RHYTHM AND INTONATION Listen again and repeat.

  Then practice the Conversation Model with a partner.



#### NOW YOU CAN

#### **Express regrets about past actions**

A NOTEPADDING Write about some regrets you have about past actions. Say how you think things might have been different in your life today.

Past action	Regret	How might things have been different?	
a job / career choice	I didn't take the job at MacroTech.	I might have been CEO by now!	
Past action	Regret	How might things have been different?	
a job / career choice			
a field of study			
a marriage / divorce			
a choice of house or apart	ment		
a move from one place to	another		



**CONVERSATION ACTIVATOR** With a partner, personalize the Conversation Model. Discuss your regrets and speculate on how things might have been different. Use information from your notepad and perfect modals. Then change roles.

- A: I should (OR I shouldn't) have ........
- B: Why do you think that?
- A: Well, I ........
- **B:** Could be. But you never know. You might ..........
- A: .......

#### DON'T STOP!

- Ask your partner more questions about his or her regrets.
- Speculate about what happened.
- Offer advice.



#### RECYCLE THIS LANGUAGE.

Why did / didn't you \_\_\_?
Why don't you \_\_\_?
How about \_\_\_?

must (not) have \_\_ may / might (not) have \_\_ could have



#### **BEFORE YOU LISTEN**

FLASH

A Signature Nocabulary • Qualifications for work or study Read and listen. Then listen again and repeat.

talents abilities in art, music, mathematics, etc., that you are born with

She was born with talents in both mathematics and art.

**skills** abilities that you learn, such as cooking, speaking a foreign language, or driving

She has several publishing skills: writing, editing, and illustrating.

**experience** time spent working at a job

Martin has a lot of experience in sales. He has worked at three companies.

knowledge understanding of or familiarity with a subject gained from experience or study

James has extensive knowledge of the history of film. You can ask him which classics to see.

qualifications talents, skills, experience, and knowledge that make a person a good candidate for a job

I have two <u>qualifications</u> for the English teaching position: I have a teaching certificate,

and I have taught English for two years.

B THINK AND EXPLAIN Explain the following in your own words. Use examples from your life.

· the difference between a talent and a skill

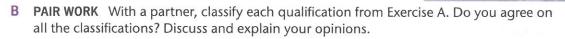
the difference between experience and knowledge

#### LISTENING COMPREHENSION

......9 Mia Kim

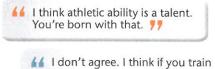
A Size LISTEN FOR DETAILS Listen to nine people being interviewed at an international job fair. Stop after each interview and match the interviewee with his or her qualification for a job. Listen again if necessary.

Interviewee	Qualifications
1 Sonia Espinoza	a a good memory
2 Silvano Lucastro	<b>b</b> artistic ability
3 Ivan Martinovic	c mathematical ability
4 Agnes Lukins	d logical thinking
5 Elena Burgess	e compassion
6 Karen Trent	f manual dexterity
7 Ed Snodgrass	g common sense
8 Akiko Uzawa	★ athletic ability



i leadership skills

a talent	a skill
athletic ability	
man male of the	



I don't agree. I think if you train and work at it, you can develop into a great athlete. I think it's a skill. FRAME YOUR IDEAS Take the skills inventory.

#### **Preparing for an Interview**

Whether you're looking for a job or interviewing for a school, interviewers expect you to answer questions about your interests, talents, skills, and experience. Take this inventory to prepare yourself for those questions.

Check the fields that interest you:    business   art   manual dexterity   artistic ability   compassion   logical thinking   a good memory   leadership skills   athletic ability   other   (advanced computer skills, for example)    Experience   Briefly note information about your experience, skills, and any special knowledge you have.    Check the qualifications you believe you have:   manual dexterity   artistic ability   compassion   a good memory   leadership skills   other   (advanced computer skills, for example)	Interests Chack the field	do that interest your	Qualifications	Department apparent of the state
Experience Briefly note information about your experience, skills, and any special knowledge you have.  Experience:	<ul><li>□ business</li><li>□ science</li></ul>	<ul><li>□ art</li><li>□ manufacturing</li></ul>	<ul> <li>□ manual dexterity</li> <li>□ logical thinking</li> <li>□ mathematical ability</li> <li>□ common sense</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>□ artistic ability</li> <li>□ compassion</li> <li>□ a good memory</li> <li>□ leadership skills</li> <li>□ other (advanced computer</li> </ul>
Experience;				Farmer Transfer and the second
				ledge you have.
Skills:	The second secon		THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF T	Control of the Contro
	Skills:		2012	

NOTEPADDING On your notepad, write specific examples of your qualifications. Then share and discuss your skills, abilities, and qualifications with a partner.

Qualification

Qualification	Example	
mathematical ability	I'm great at number puzzles.	n lest de
Evample		

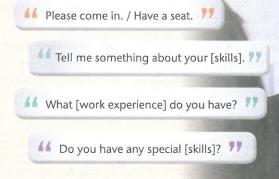
1/2				
		SCOTI PROPERTY.	NO COLUMN TO SERVICE S	and the same of the same of

PAIR WORK Use the information on your notepad to do one of the following activities.

- Role-play an interview for a job.
- Role-play an interview for career advice.
- · Role-play an interview for entry into a professional (or other kind of) school.



I have three years of [French].



GROUP WORK Tell your class what you learned about your partner in the interview.

My partner has a lot of experience in . . . \*\*\*



#### **BEFORE YOU READ**

4	<b>WARM-UP</b> How important do you think the following factors are to career success? Number the factors in order of importance, making 1 the most important and 6 the least important.
	skills
В	<b>DISCUSSION</b> Explain the reasons for your most important and least important choices.

#### READING ▶ 3:29

# The Five Most Effective Work Habits Advice to new workers from a CEO

If you are new to the working world, you are eager to demonstrate your skills and knowledge. However, in addition to those, some basic work habits may be even more effective in promoting your success. Read the following advice to new workers, written by the head of a company.

- 1 Volunteer for assignments One of the best ways to signal that you are a keen learner and are not afraid of hard work is to volunteer for assignments. However, before volunteering for a task, be sure you have the skills and knowledge to accomplish it successfully.
- 2 Be nice to people Be nice to people regardless of their rank or position. When you are nice to people, they go out of their way to help you, and every new worker needs help in order to get ahead.
- 3 Prioritize your work We all love to start work on things that are close to our hearts. However, these may not be the most urgent and important in our list of tasks to do. Have a list of things to do according to their strategic importance to your company. When you prioritize your work, you are more productive, and that

- increases your chances of career success.
- 4 Stay positive As someone new in the working world, you are not used to office culture. And there may be office politics that complicate things. Try to stay above politics and remain positive in the face of

challenges. When you are positive, you stay focused on your goals. You make better decisions and, therefore, get more things done.

5 Highlight a problem but bring solutions Offer a solution each time you highlight a problem to your boss or management. You need to remember that when you bring problems and not solutions, people may think of you as a "complainer."

These five work habits, at first glance, may seem like common sense. However, in actual working environments, people tend to forget the basics. I counsel new workers in our company to internalize this behavior and consistently use it to increase their chances of career success.



Source: Adapted from <u>www.career-success-for-newbies.com</u>.

A	UNDERSTAND FROM CONTEXT	Find and underline the words below in the Reading. Use
	context to help you write a de-	finition for each. Then compare definitions with a partner

a habit							
a solution							
volunteer				1, 1	139	1971	D. T
prioritize		1 1 3	Ta House	T mleads	7-4		

- B CONFIRM CONTENT Answer the questions, according to what the CEO suggests.
  - 1 Which may be most important in determining a new worker's success: knowledge, work habits, or skills?
  - 2 Why should workers volunteer to do tasks?
  - 3 Why is "being nice" a valuable habit to develop?
  - 4 What is the value of prioritizing tasks?
  - 5 How does staying positive help you be more productive?
  - 6 What's wrong with stating a problem without proposing a solution?



#### NOW YOU CAN Dis

#### Discuss factors that promote success

A NOTEPADDING On your notepad, write some factors that have helped you be successful in your life, studies, or work, and some factors that have prevented you from being successful. (You can choose one, some, or all areas to comment on.) Then compare notepads with a partner.

	Area	Factors that helped ©	Factors that hurt 🖯	
	my personal life	love, patience, common sense!	not listening to or paying attention to	other
Area	Fa	ctors that helped ©	Factors that hurt 🖰	sigm sr/W
my persona	al life		No. operation	
managing	my home		e pet Paren Lought vereinnet 1	
my studies	/ work			

**B DISCUSSION** Discuss factors that you think promote success and factors that don't. Use your notepad for support, but expand on it with specific examples from your life to illustrate each factor. Talk about plans that changed and any regrets you may have.

Factors	Changes in plans	Regrets
talents skills experience knowledge common sense	I thought I would, but I was going to, but I changed my mind talked me out of it. It's hard to make a living as My tastes changed.	I should have _ I could have _ I might have _ I would have _

#### Text-mining (optional)

Find and underline three words or phrases in the Reading that were new to you. Use them in your Discussion. For example: "prioritize your work."



A \$\infty\$ 3:30 Listen to the conversations between people talking about life changes. Write information on the notepad. Listen again if necessary.

	Why did the person change his or her mind?	Any regrets?	
1			
2			110
3			
4			

**B** Explain the meaning of each of the qualifications. Then write an occupation or course of study for a person with each qualification.

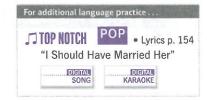
	Qualification	Definition	Occupation or Study
1	athletic ability	i Produktedome ty in ji ktwi	Li causiiG [1].[2].ia8
2	artistic ability		
3	mathematical ability	TALLER DATOS DE SECTION DE L'ANDRESSES	THE PART SHEETINGS
4	logical thinking ability		
5	a good memory		
6	leadership skills	for his on the own days	

- C Complete each statement of belief, using would.
  - 1 When I was a child, I thought I
  - 2 My parents believed .....
  - 3 My teachers were sure .....
  - 4 When I finished school, I didn't know .....
- D Read each sentence. Complete the statement in parentheses, using a perfect modal.
  - 1 Marie was very unhappy in her marriage. (She should . . . )
  - **2** After Sylvia moved to another country, she discovered she liked her own better. (She could . . .)
  - 3 My parents were sorry they sold their country house. (They shouldn't...)
  - 4 I can't understand how she learned to speak Italian so fast. (She might . . . )
  - 5 Look at John's car. It's all smashed up. (He must . . . )

#### WRITING

Write a short autobiography. Include information about one or all of the topics below. If you have any regrets, express them, using perfect modals.

- your birth
- your studies
- your childhood
- · other aspects of your life
- WRITING BOOSTER p. 150
- Dividing an essay into topics
- · Guidance for this writing exercise



1. She should have tried to communicate

more with her husband.

#### **ORAL REVIEW**

**STORY IN PAIRS** Choose one of the characters: Michael or Carlota. Look at the pictures for each of the three dates. Tell the story of your character to your partner. Then change partners and choose a different character.





# **Holidays and Traditions**

#### **COMMUNICATION GOALS**

- 1 Wish someone a good holiday.
- 2 Ask about local customs.
- 3 Exchange information about holidays.
- 4 Explain wedding traditions.

#### **PREVIEW**











- A Look at the photos. Which traditions are you already familiar with? Which ones would you like to know more about? Why?
- **B DISCUSSION** Why do people keep traditions alive? Do you think it's important to learn about the customs of other cultures? Explain your reasons.

#### **ENGLISH FOR TODAY'S WORLD**

Understand English speakers from different language backgrounds. Basma = Arabic speaker Mi-Cha = Korean speaker

▶ 4:02 PHOTO STORY Read and listen to a conversation about holiday traditions.



Basma: Wow! That dress your sister's wearing is gorgeous! What was the occasion?

Mi-Cha: Oh, that was for Chuseok. The dress is called a hanbok.

Basma: Did you say Chuseok? What's that—a holiday?

Mi-Cha: That's right. It's a traditional Korean holiday. It takes place in September or October each year to celebrate the harvest.

Basma: So does everyone dress up

like that?

Mi-Cha: Some people do.



Basma: So what else does everyone do on Chuseok?

Mi-Cha: We get together with our relatives. And we eat a lot!

Basma: Well, that sounds nice.

Mi-Cha: Not only that, but we go to our hometowns and visit the graves of our ancestors.

Basma: So I suppose the airports and train stations are mobbed with people, right?

Mi-Cha: Totally. And the traffic is impossible. It takes hours to get anywhere.



Basma: I think every country's got at least one holiday like that!

Mi-Cha: What holiday comes to mind for you?

Basma: It reminds me of Eid al-Adha, a four-day religious holiday we celebrate where I come from.

Mi-Cha: In what way?

Basma: Well, people put on their best clothes, and we eat a ton of great food. We also travel to be with our relatives and visit the graves of our loved ones who have died.

Mi-Cha: How about that! Sounds just like our holiday.

- PARAPHRASE Find each underlined expression in the Photo Story. Write each sentence in your own words.
  - 1 "It takes place in September or October."
  - 2 "We get together with our relatives."
  - 3 "The train stations are mobbed with people."

......

.....

- 4 "The traffic is impossible."
- 5 "It reminds me of Eid al-Adha."
- E FOCUS ON LANGUAGE Write five sentences about a holiday or a tradition in your country, using the underlined language from Exercise D.

Songkran takes place in April.

#### **SPEAKING**

Complete the chart about traditions in your country. Present your information to the class.

A special type of clothing	Explain when it is worn.
A type of music	Explain when it is played.
A special dish	Explain when it is eaten.
A traditional song	Explain when it is sung.
A special event	Explain what happens.

#### CONVERSATION MODEL

▶ 4:03 Read and listen to a conversation about a holiday.

- A: I heard there's going to be a holiday next week.
- B: That's right. The Harvest Moon Festival.
- A: What kind of holiday is it?
- B: It's a seasonal holiday that takes place in autumn. People spend time with their families and eat moon cakes.
- A: Well, have a great Harvest Moon Festival!
- B: Thanks! Same to you!
- ▶ 4:04 RHYTHM AND INTONATION Listen again and repeat. Then practice the Conversation Model with a partner.





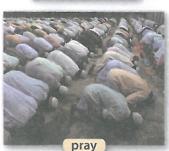


#### FLASH

#### VOCABULARY Ways to commemorate a holiday

A \$\int\_{4:06}\$ Read and listen. Then listen again and repeat.



















PAIR WORK Match the Vocabulary with holidays and celebrations you know.

Everyone wears costumes on . . . \*\*\*

▶4.07 LISTEN TO ACTIVATE VOCABULARY Listen and use the Vocabulary to complete the chart.

	Type of holiday	What people do to celebrate
Mardi Gras (U.S.)		
Bastille Day (France)		
Tsagaan Sar (Mongolia)		

#### GRAMMAR Adjective clauses with subject relative pronouns who and that

Adjective clauses identify or describe people or things. Introduce adjective clauses about people with the relative pronouns who or that.

A mariachi singer is someone

who (or that) sings traditional Mexican music.

Carnaval is a great holiday for people

who (or that) like parades.

Families

who (or that) want to watch the fireworks go to the park.

Use that, not who, for adjective clauses that describe things.

Thanksgiving is a celebration

that takes place in November.

The parade

that commemorates Bastille Day is very exciting.

#### Be careful!

Don't use a subject pronoun after the relative pronouns who or that.

Don't say: Thanksgiving is a celebration that it takes place in November.

#### GRAMMAR BOOSTER p. 136

- · Adjective clauses: common errors
- · Reflexive pronouns
- By + reflexive pronouns
- Reciprocal pronouns: each other and one another
- **UNDERSTAND THE GRAMMAR** Underline the adjective clauses and circle the relative pronouns. Then draw an arrow from the relative pronoun to the noun or pronoun it describes.
  - 1 Ramadan is a religious tradition (that) begins on a different day every year.
  - 2 Chuseok is a Korean seasonal holiday that celebrates the yearly harvest.
  - 3 The woman who designed those amazing costumes for the parade is really talented.
  - 4 The celebrations that take place in Brazil during Carnaval are really wild!
  - 5 People who remember April Fool's Day every April 1st have a lot of fun.
  - 6 The Dragon Boat Festival in China is a holiday that takes place in May or June.
- **GRAMMAR PRACTICE** On a separate sheet of paper, write five sentences with adjective clauses to describe some holidays and traditions in your country.

.. is a religious tradition that. ... is a great holiday for people who ...

Some ways to exchange good

Enjoy yourself on [Chuseok]!

You too! / Same to you!

Have a [nice / great / happy] holiday!

wishes on holidays



VIDEO

#### Wish someone a good holiday

CONVERSATION ACTIVATOR Use your chart from page 75 to role-play the Conversation Model with a visitor to your country. Wish each other a good holiday. Then change roles.

A: I heard there's going to be a holiday next .........

B: That's right. .......

A: What kind of holiday is it?

B: It's a ...... holiday that takes place ........ People .......

A: Well, .....!

B: ......

CHANGE PARTNERS Exchange wishes about other holidays.

Ask and answer more questions. Use the Vocabulary.

What else do people do? Do people [send cards]? What kinds of [food do you eat / music do they play]? Where do people [march in parades]?

People celebrate the Holi Festival in India by throwing colored powder and water on each other.

#### CONVERSATION MODEL

- ▶ 4:08 Read and listen to a conversation about local customs.
  - A: Do you mind if I ask you about something?
  - B: Of course not. What's up?
  - A: I'm not sure about the customs here. If someone invites you for dinner, should you bring the host a gift?
  - B: Yes. It's a good idea. But the gift that you bring should be inexpensive.
  - A: Would it be appropriate to bring flowers?
  - B: Definitely!
  - A: Thanks. That's really helpful.
- ▶ 4:09 RHYTHM AND INTONATION Listen again and repeat. Then practice the Conversation Model with a partner.



#### GRAMMAR Adjective clauses with object relative pronouns who, whom, and that

In some adjective clauses, the relative pronoun is the subject of the clause. In other adjective clauses, the relative pronoun is the object of the clause.

who as subject = (The people are the guests.) who as object = (You invite the people.) The people who are the guests should bring gifts. The people who you invite should bring gifts.

When a relative pronoun is an object of a clause, use who, that, or whom for people and that for things. The relative pronoun is often omitted, especially in speaking. (Note: whom is very formal.)

The people who (or that / whom) you invite should bring gifts. / The people you invite should bring gifts. The gifts that you bring should be inexpensive. / The gifts you bring should be inexpensive.

#### Be careful!

When the relative pronoun is the subject of the clause, it can NOT be omitted. Don't say: The people are the guests should bring gifts.

Do not use an object pronoun after the verb. Don't say: The people who you invite them should bring gifts. GRAMMAR BOOSTER p. 138

· Adjective clauses: who and whom in formal English

- **UNDERSTAND THE GRAMMAR** Correct the error in the adjective clause in each sentence. Explain each correction.
  - 1 Putting butter on a child's nose is a birthday tradition who people observe on the Atlantic coast of Canada.

Only use who for people.



- 2 On the Day of the Dead, Mexicans remember family members who they have died.
- 3 The tomatoes that people throw them at each other during La Tomatina in Buñol, Spain, make a terrible mess.
- 4 The performer sang that traditional holiday song is world-famous.
- 5 The fireworks people set them off during the summer festivals in Japan are very beautiful.

В	GRAMMAR PRACTICE Complete the adjective clause in each sentence, using the cues. Omit the relative pronoun when possible.				
	1 The traditional Chinese dress				
	5 Anzac Day is a holiday				
P	RONUNCIATION "Thought groups"  A Chinese woman wearing a traditional cheongsam				
A	▶4:10 "Thought groups" clarify the meaning of sentences. Notice how sentence rhythm indicates how thoughts are grouped. Read and listen. Then listen again and repeat.				
	1 The person who comes for dinner should bring flowers.				
	2 The man we invited to the party is from Senegal.				
	3 The song that you were listening to is fado music from Portugal.				
	4 The Cherry Blossom Festival is a tradition that people observe in Japan every spring.				
В	Practice reading aloud the sentences you completed in Exercise B above, breaking the sentences into thought groups.				
N	OW YOU CAN Ask about local customs				
A	CONVERSATION ACTIVATOR With a partner, change the Conversation Model. Role-play a conversation in which you ask about local customs. Use the Ideas from the box. Then change roles.  A: Do you mind if I ask you about something?  B:				
	A: I'm not sure about the customs here. If , should ?  B: ?				
	A: Would it be appropriate to 2 DUNI STUP!				
	B:				
	A: Thanks. That's really helpful.  Would it be [customary / impolite / offensive] to ?				
	Should I?				

B CHANGE PARTNERS Ask about local customs in other situations.

#### BEFORE YOU READ

WARM-UP Look at the photos and the names of the holidays in the Reading. How would you categorize each holiday historical, seasonal, or religious? Are you familiar with any of these holidays? What do you know about them?

READING 14:11

# Holidays Around the World

#### Ramadan, the Month of Fasting

"May you be well throughout the year" is the typical greeting during Ramadan, the ninth month of the Islamic calendar, a special occasion for over one billion Muslims throughout the world. According to Islamic tradition, Ramadan marks the time when Muhammad received the word of God through the Koran. Throughout the month, Muslims fast-totally abstaining from food and drink from the break of dawn until the setting of the sun. It is also a time of increased worship and giving to the poor and the community. Ramadan ends with the festival of Eid ul-Fitr-three days of family celebrations-and eating!

their parents a healthy and happy new year and receive red envelopes with money inside. It is customary for people to give each other small gifts of fruits and sweets and to visit older family members.



On the last day, people have a parade in the street carrying a large cloth dragon.



Worshippers pray during Ramadan.

#### The Chinese New Year

The Chinese New Year is celebrated by Chinese around the world and marks the beginning of the first month in the Chinese calendar. The celebration usually takes place in February and lasts for fifteen days. Before the holiday begins, families clean out their houses to sweep away bad luck, and they decorate their doors with red paper and big Chinese characters for happiness, wealth, and longevity. The night before, families gather together for a delicious meal. Outside, people set off firecrackers that make loud noises all through the night. In the morning, children wish

#### Simón Bolívar's Birthday

Simón Bolívar was born on July 24, 1783, in Caracas, Venezuela. He is known throughout Latin America as

"The Liberator" because he led the fight for independence from Spain. His armies freed Venezuela, Bolivia, Colombia, Ecuador, and Peru. He is memorialized in many ways, but two countries celebrate his birthday every July 24th—Venezuela and Ecuador. On that day, schools and most general businesses are closed, and there are military parades and government ceremonies. But the malls are open, and people usually use the holiday to go shopping.



Bolívar led the fight for independence.

80

On this holiday, people		Ramadan	Chinese New Year	Bolívar's Birthday	
give gifts. wear costumes.		0	0	0	
pray.			fail them the O being an		
wish each other well.		0	0	0	
get together with the		0	0		
decorate their homes		papma o papm	ment to Oathy someo	gement oan agree	
celebrate for several		0	0	0	
give away money.		0	O	O and along	
have parades.		0	0	0	
avoid eating during th	e day.	lly on Ovim a	spades Au O lassa6	o or o of o	
PARE AND CONTRAST the Reading do you fi	nd the most ir		? holiday you kn	SONAL EXPERIENCE Nation in	
			RECYC	LE THIS LANGUAGE.	nsive to
EPADDING With a par atry. Discuss the tradit at them on your notep	tner, choose the ions of each ho ads.	nree holidays in oliday and write	your Tradition It's custo It's prob	ally, people   It's offer mary to   It's impose the   It's impose the	olite to
EPADDING With a par atry. Discuss the tradit at them on your notep	tner, choose th	nree holidays in oliday and write	your Tradition It's custo	ally, people   It's offer omary to   is tal	ooo. olite to
EPADDING With a par etry. Discuss the tradit at them on your notep hame of holiday	tner, choose the ions of each ho ads.	nree holidays in oliday and write	your Tradition It's custo It's prob	ally, people   It's offer mary to   It's impose the   It's impose the	ooo. olite to
EPADDING With a paratry. Discuss the tradit it them on your noteponame of holiday	tner, choose the ions of each ho ads.	nree holidays in oliday and write	your Tradition It's custo It's prob	ally, people   It's offer mary to   It's impose the   It's impose the	ooo. olite to
EPADDING With a paratry. Discuss the tradit it them on your noteponame of holiday ourpose	tner, choose the ions of each ho ads.	nree holidays in oliday and write	your Tradition It's custo It's prob	ally, people   It's offer mary to   It's impose the   It's impose the	ooo. olite to
EPADDING With a paratry. Discuss the tradit at them on your noteponame of holiday courpose expical food	tner, choose the ions of each ho ads.	nree holidays in oliday and write	your Tradition It's custo It's prob	ally, people   It's offer mary to   It's impose the   It's impose the	ooo. olite to
EPADDING With a par atry. Discuss the tradit at them on your notep	tner, choose the ions of each ho ads.	nree holidays in oliday and write	your Tradition It's custo It's prob	ally, people   It's offer mary to   It's impose the   It's impose the	ooo. olite to

#### BEFORE YOU LISTEN



►4.12 VOCABULARY • Getting married Read and listen. Then listen again and repeat.

#### THE EVENTS

- an engagement an agreement to marry someone—get engaged v.
- **a (marriage) ceremony** the set of actions that formally makes two single people become a married couple—get married v.
- a wedding a formal marriage ceremony, especially one with a religious service
- a reception a large formal party after a wedding ceremony
- a honeymoon a vacation taken by two newlyweds after their wedding

#### THE PEOPLE

- a fiancé a man who is engaged
- a fiancée a woman who is engaged a bride a woman at the time she
- a groom a man at the time he gets
- newlyweds the bride and groom immediately after the wedding
- **DISCUSSION** Read about wedding traditions in many countries. How are these similar to or different from traditions practiced in your country?



The bride throws the bouquet after the wedding ceremony. The woman who catches it is believed to be the next to get married.



The newlyweds cut the cake together at the wedding reception.



The groom carries the bride "across the threshold," through the doorway to their new home. Soon after the wedding, they go on their honeymoon.

#### LISTENING COMPREHENSION

- ▶4:13 LISTEN FOR MAIN IDEAS Listen to Part 1 of a lecture about a traditional Indian wedding. Which of the statements best summarizes the information?
  - ☐ a An Indian couple gets engaged long before the wedding.
  - ☐ b There's a lot of preparation before an Indian wedding.
  - C An Indian wedding lasts for days.
- ▶414 LISTEN FOR DETAILS Listen again to Part 1 and circle the best way to complete each statement.
  - 1 A traditional Hindu wedding celebration can last for more than (two / five) days.
  - 2 The bride's and groom's birthdates are used to choose the (engagement / wedding) date.
  - 3 Before the wedding, musicians visit the (bride's / groom's) home.
  - 4 The (bride / groom) is washed with oil.
  - 5 An older relative offers the (bride / groom) money.
  - 6 Relatives spend a lot of time painting the (bride's / groom's) skin.

С	▶ 4:15 LISTEN FOR MAIN IDEAS Now listen to Part 2 of					
	□ a the wedding ceremony □ b the honeymoon □ c the reception after the wedding					
D	<ul> <li>□ 1 Relatives wash the bride's and groom's hands.</li> <li>□ 2 The bride is seated behind a cloth so the groom</li> <li>□ 3 Relatives throw rice grains at the bride and groo</li> <li>□ 4 The couple gives each other rings made of flowe</li> <li>□ 5 The groom places a flower necklace around the</li> </ul>	cannot see her. m. ers.	that are true.			
NO	W YOU CAN Explain wedding traditions		"The woman			
A	son when you		cries before the wedding and the man after."  Poland			
	wish. Marry off your daughter when you can."  Italy  Italy  When you can."  "Marriages are all happy. It's having breakfast together that causes all the trouble."  Ireland	e no children."  South Africa	Advice to the bride: "Wear something old and something new, something borrowed, and something blue."  United Kingdom			
В	DISCUSSION Do you find any of the sayings or prove sayings or proverbs about weddings do you know in		why not? What			
С	NOTEPADDING On your notepad, make a list of wedding traditions in your country. Compare your lists with those of other groups.	Before the we	dding:			
D	PAIR WORK Role-play a conversation in which you describe local wedding traditions to a visitor to your country. Ask and answer questions about the details. Use the Vocabulary.	At the weddin	At the wedding ceremony:			
	RECYCLE THIS LANGUAGE.					
	[a religious] tradition [a huge] celebration the bride / the groom / the newlyweds					
	take place in spend time with [someone]	After the wed	After the wedding:			
	It's [customary / common / appropriate] to					
	Well, before they get engaged, they have to **					
	So how does a couple get engaged here?	1 20 100				

# REVIEW

- A \$\infty 4:17 Listen to each conversation and circle the occasion or the people they are talking about. Then listen again and circle \( \tilde{\Tr} \) if the statement is true or \( \tilde{\Frac{F}} \) if it is false. Correct any false statements. Listen again if necessary.
  - 1 (an engagement / a reception / a honeymoon)
  - 2 (an engagement / a reception / a honeymoon)
  - 3 (a bride / a groom / relatives)
  - 4 (a bride / a groom / relatives)

- T F The man who is speaking is the groom.
- T F The man who is speaking will be the groom.
- **T F** The woman who is speaking is the bride.
- **T F** The woman who is speaking is a guest.
- **B** Complete each statement, using verbs from the unit Vocabulary. Then write the name of a holiday you know for each statement.

Name a holiday when people	Examples		
1 fireworks.			
2 in parades.	4		
3 picnics.	H 2		
4 time with their families.	No project		
5 costumes.			
6 gifts.			
7 each other well.			

- C Complete each sentence with an adjective clause. Find the information in this unit, if necessary.
  - 1 A groom is a man . Who has just gotten married
    - 2 Eid ul-Fitr is a religious holiday ......
    - 3 A honeymoon is a vacation ......
    - 4 A hanbok is a traditional dress ......
- D On a separate sheet of paper, complete each statement about local traditions in your country.

  - 1 If someone invites you to his or her house for dinner, you should . . .2 If someone gives you an expensive gift, you should . . .
  - 3 If you are invited to a formal wedding, you should wear . . .
  - 4 If a friend or colleague gets engaged, you should . . .
  - 5 If someone wants to get married, he or she should . . .

#### WRITING

Describe two different holidays that are celebrated in your country. Include as many details as you can about each.

- What kind of holiday is it?
- When is it celebrated?
- How is it celebrated?
- What do people do / eat / say / wear, etc.?
- WRITING BOOSTER p. 151
- Descriptive details
- Guidance for this writing exercise

#### **ORAL REVIEW**

PAIR WORK CHALLENGE For one minute, look at the Fact Sheet for one of the holidays. Your partner looks at the other Fact Sheet. Then close your books. Ask and answer questions about each other's holidays. For example:

Why do people celebrate Songkran?

PAIR WORK Create conversations for the people.

- 1 Ask about one of the holidays. Start like this:
  - I heard there's going to be a holiday.
- 2 Ask about local customs during the holiday. Start like this: Do you mind if I ask you something?

GROUP PRESENTATION Choose one of the holidays and give a presentation to your group or class. Use adjective clauses.

Songkran is a seasonal holiday that ...



#### **FACT SHEET**

- start of the Buddhist New Year.beginning of the farming season

- make offerings at temples.sing in the street.throw lots of water at each other!



NOTE: Don't worry! It's customary

#### FACT SHEET

#### Mexican Independence Day

Celebrated on September 15 and 16.

#### Commemorates.

- · the beginning of the War of Independence.
- · Mexico's independence from Spain.

- · march in parades.
- · perform traditional music.
- · decorate with the colors of the Mexican flag (red, white, and green).
- · set off fireworks.
- · eat special dishes (sometimes red, white, and green).



NOTE: It's customary for people to shout, "Viva México!" Even if you are not Mexican, you can join in.



dehkhodaedu.com

#### **NOW I CAN**

- ☐ Wish someone a good holiday.
- Ask about local customs.
- ☐ Exchange information about holidays.
- Explain wedding traditions.

# **COMMUNICATION GOALS**

- 1 Describe technology.
- 2 Take responsibility for a mistake.
- 3 Describe new inventions.
- 4 Discuss the impact of inventions / discoveries.





The mosquito net



The X-ray



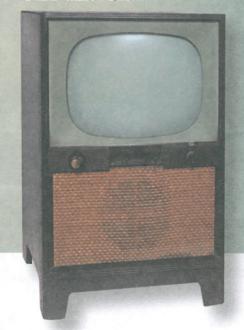
nat X-Strahlen aufgenommen von Professor Dr. W. C. Römgen.



The 3-D printer



The television



A DISCUSSION Most of the pictures represent inventions. Do you know which one(s) resulted from a discovery? How would you explain the difference between an invention and a discovery? Provide some examples of inventions and discoveries.

B PHOTO STORY Read and listen to a conversation about how an invention might have helped someone.



Leslie: This itching is driving me crazy!

Jody: Look at your arm! Are those
mosquito bites?

Leslie: Yeah. Ben and I got eaten alive last weekend. We went away for a second honeymoon at this cute little bed and breakfast in the mountains, but the mosquitoes were brutal.

Jody: That doesn't sound very romantic. Didn't they have screens in the windows?



Leslie: Well, they did, but ours had a big hole, and we didn't realize it until the middle of the night. What a nightmare!

Jody: Too bad you didn't bring any insect repellent. There are tons of mosquitoes in the mountains this time of year. Hello!

Leslie: We actually did have some, but it just didn't work that well. You know how Ben is—everything has to be organic and natural and . . .



Jody: Well, with all due respect to Ben, you just have to bite the bullet once in a while and use the stuff that works. Whether you like it or not, the poison is effective.

Leslie: I agree, but Ben won't hear of it. You know, next time we go away for a romantic weekend, I'm packing one of those mosquito nets to hang over the bed.

- C PARAPHRASE Say each of the underlined expressions from the Photo Story in your own way.
  - 1 "Ben and I got eaten alive last weekend."
  - 2 "... the mosquitoes were brutal."
  - 3 "There are tons of mosquitoes in the mountains this time of year."
  - 4 "... you just have to bite the bullet once in a while and use the stuff that works."
  - 5 "Whether you like it or not, the poison is effective."
  - 6 "I agree, but Ben won't hear of it."

- **D THINK AND EXPLAIN** Answer the questions, according to the Photo Story.
  - 1 What effect does a mosquito bite cause?
  - 2 Where were Leslie and Ben when they got the mosquito bites?
  - 3 How did mosquitoes get into their bedroom?
  - 4 Why would Ben object to "the stuff that works"?
  - **5** What is another preventive measure against mosquitoes?

#### **SPEAKING**

Read the list of important inventions and discoveries and add another important one to the list. Then rank them in order of importance from 1 (most important) to 10 (least important). With a partner compare rankings and explain your reasons for ranking one the most important.

Rank	Item	Rank	Item
	air travel		the printing press
	antibiotics		the Internet
	smart phones		vaccination
	insect repellents		water purification systems
	mosquito nets		other:

## PLASE VOCABULARY Describing manufactured products

A ►4:21 Read and listen. Then listen again and repeat.

Uses new technology	Offers high quality	Uses new ideas
high-tech OR	high-end OR	innovative OR
state-of-the-art OR	top-of-the-line OR	revolutionary OR
cutting-edge	first-rate	novel

- B LISTEN TO ACTIVATE VOCABULARY Listen to the ads and choose the correct word or phrase.
  - 1 The Strawberry smart phone is (state-of-the-art / top-of-the-line).
  - 2 The Blackstone is a (revolutionary / high-end) device.
  - 3 The Micro scanner is a (high-end / cutting-edge) product.
  - 4 The Digicon B1X Beta is a (novel / first-rate) camera.
  - 5 The 17-inch LCD monitor is (innovative / top-of-the-line).

#### Contractions

I / you would  $\rightarrow$  I'd / you'd he / she would  $\rightarrow$  he'd / she'd we / they would  $\rightarrow$  we'd / they'd

#### GRAMMAR The unreal conditional: Review and expansion

Remember: Unreal conditional sentences describe unreal conditions—conditions that don't exist. Use the simple past tense or  $\underline{\text{were}}$  in the  $\underline{\text{if}}$  clause. Use  $\underline{\text{would}}$  or  $\underline{\text{could}}$  in the result clause.

if clause (unreal action or condition)

result clause (if it were true)

If I wanted a cutting-edge phone, If you were here,

I'd look for one at TechnoWorld. (But I don't want one.) we could study together. (But you are not here.)

The <u>if</u> clause can occur first or last. If the <u>if</u> clause comes first, use a comma.

If it weren't so expensive, they would buy it. OR They would buy it if it weren't so expensive.

#### **Questions**

If you saw a lighter laptop, would you buy it? (Yes, I would. / No, I wouldn't.)

Where would you go if there were an affordable cruise?

If your car died on the highway, who would you call?

#### Be careful!

Never use would in an if clause. Don't say: If you would be here.

#### GRAMMAR BOOSTER p. 139

- Real and unreal conditionals: review
- Clauses after wish
- Unless in conditional sentences
- A UNDERSTAND THE GRAMMAR Check the statements that describe unreal conditions.
  - ☐ 1 If they see something first-rate, they buy it.
  - □ 2 If you turned off your phone in the theater, it wouldn't bother the other theatergoers.
  - ☐ 3 I'll save a lot of money on gas if I rent the Alva.
  - ☐ 4 She could show us how to use the Digicon remote keyboard if she were here.
- **B** GRAMMAR PRACTICE Choose the correct forms to complete the unreal conditional sentences.
  - 1 If the Teknicon 17-inch monitor (were / would be) on sale, I (will / would) buy it right away.
  - 2 If they (would invent / invented) a safe way to text-message while driving, people (will / would) be happy.
  - 3 If she (knew / would know) about the Pictopia camera watch, she (will / would) use it on her trip.
  - 4 What (will / would) you do if your laptop (broke / would break)?

- C Use the prompts to create unreal conditional sentences.
  - 1 (Most people / buy) high-end products if (they / have) enough money.
  - 2 If (there / be) an Internet connection in her room, (she / send) her office the report now?
  - 3 (I / not / get) a Lunetti phone if (I / have) all the money in the world. They say it's cutting-edge, but I don't think it's first-rate.
  - 4 If (you / go) to Airport Electronics, (you / pay) a lot less for a top-of-the-line tablet?
- **D** PAIR WORK Complete the statements. Then share and explain your statements with your class.
  - 1 If money were not a problem, . . .
  - 2 People would stop getting infected with diseases if . . .
  - 3 I would stay up all night tonight if . . .



#### CONVERSATION MODEL

- A 23 Read and listen to a conversation about new technology.
  - A: I just got a new car.
  - B: No kidding! What kind?
  - A: The Alva 500. The 500 model is top-of-the-line. I thought I'd treat myself.
  - **B:** Well, congratulations! If I had the money, I'd get a new car myself.
- B •4:24 RHYTHM AND INTONATION Listen again and repeat.
  Then practice the Conversation Model with a partner.



## **NOW YOU CAN**

#### Describe technology

A NOTEPADDING Write one product you've recently gotten (OR would like to have) for each category.

Quality	Product name	Adjective
Uses new technology:	the Whisper combination	state-of-the-art
	hairdryer / cell phone	
The second secon		

Quality	Product name	Adjective
Uses new technology:		
Offers high quality:		
Uses new ideas:		



**CONVERSATION ACTIVATOR** With a partner, role-play a new conversation, changing the Conversation Model with one of the products and adjectives on your notepad. Use the unreal conditional. Then change roles.

Λ.	Liust	ant		
A	111111	(1(1))		

B: No kidding! What kind?

A: ......... It's ........ I thought I'd treat myself.

B: Well, congratulations! If I ......., I'd ........

#### DON'T STOP!

Discuss another product and use other adjectives. Ask questions about it:

What does it look like? How does it work? How [fast / accurate / powerful] is it? Does it work well? Is it guaranteed?

**C CHANGE PARTNERS** Personalize the conversation again, using other products on your notepad.

- ▶4:25 Read and listen to someone taking responsibility for a mistake.
  - A: Sorry I'm late. I thought the meeting was tomorrow.
  - B: What happened?
  - A: I'm ashamed to say I just forgot to put it on my calendar.
  - B: Don't worry. That can happen to anyone.
  - A: Well, if I had written it down, I wouldn't have forgotten.
  - B: No harm done. We were just getting started.
- ▶4:26 RHYTHM AND INTONATION Listen again and repeat. Then practice the Conversation Model with a partner.



#### GRAMMAR The past unreal conditional

The past unreal conditional describes past unreal or untrue conditions and results. Use the past perfect in the if clause. Use would have or could have + a past participle in the result clause.

If she had rented a more economical car, she wouldn't have spent so much money on gas. (But she didn't rent a more economical car.)

If Jonas Salk hadn't invented a vaccine to protect people against polio, many more people would have gotten the disease. (But he did invent a vaccine.)

Be careful!

Don't use would or could in the if clause. Don't say: "If Jonas Salk wouldn't have invented . . .

#### **Questions and answers**

Could they have prevented the accident if they had known the tires were so old? (Yes, they could have. / No, they couldn't have.)

What would you have done if you hadn't had your phone with you? (I would have borrowed one.)

GRAMMAR BOOSTER p. 140

· The unreal conditional: variety of forms

- **UNDERSTAND THE GRAMMAR** Choose the meaning of each past unreal conditional sentence.
  - 1 I wouldn't have gone to class if I had known I had the flu.
    - a I went to class.
- **b** I didn't go t∋ class.
- 2 If we had used our GPS, we wouldn't have gotten lost.
  - a We got lost.

- b We didn't get lost.
- 3 If they hadn't planted that new variety of tomatoes, they would have lost this year's crop.
  - a They lost this year's crop.
- b They didn't lose this year's crop.
- 4 The airline wouldn't have canceled the flight if the weather had been better.
  - a They canceled the flight.
- b They didn't cancel the flight.
- **GRAMMAR PRACTICE** Complete the sentences in the past unreal conditional. Use would.

1	What	you	. if you	the train?
2	We this c	do digital video conference if a	n Internet connect	miss rion available
3	If our huge old camcorder	, we		this smaller one.
4	If she	not / break her smart phone, she	not / buy	. they canceled her flight.
5	If they	good weather, they	not/know	in Alaska this morning.
6	If theynot / take If the weather	better, we	not / land	o the beach.
	be		go	

Thin work head each ease study and complete	e the statements with your own ideas and the past unreal conditional.
On Monday you bought a new Blendini sport because its advertising said it was very economic However, on Friday you read this headline in newspaper: "Blendini Company fined for lyin about statistics. Car uses more fuel than all of of its class."  If I had seen	Everything in every store was half-price. You didn't know, and you went shopping somewhere else.  When you got home, a friend called to tell you about all the bargains she got.  If I
	A You have become insective collection a twic to the
2 You forgot to close the windows in your house a weekend trip. There was a terrible rainstorm you got home, some of your furniture was do by the water. Your family blamed you becau were the last to leave the house.	mountains. When you got there, the mosquitoes were brutal. Before you sprayed the repellent on yourself and your children, you looked at the label. It said, "Caution. Not for use on children under 12."
If I hadn't forgotten	If I
D. ADDIVITUE ODAMMAD. Describition of the District	27 Complete this statement
D APPLY THE GRAMMAR Reread the Photo Story	
If	, Leslie and Ben wouldn't have gotten eaten alive by mosquitoes.
PRONUNCIATION Contractions with 'd in s	noken English
A  •4:27 Notice the pronunciation of the spoken Then listen again and repeat.	contractions of <u>had</u> , <u>would</u> , and <u>did</u> . Read and listen.
/wɛrd/ 1 Where did you go? → Where'd you go?	3 It would be OK. $\rightarrow \frac{\text{/rtad/}}{\text{lt'd}}$ be OK.
2 Who did you see? $\rightarrow$ Who'd you see?	4 If we had had a map, we wouldn't have gotten lost.   /wid/ If we'd had a map, we wouldn't have gotten lost.
Note: Where'd, Who'd, and It'd are contracted in speech,	9
D A22 LICTEMING COMPDEHENCION White the	contanges you have Write full not contracted forms
	sentences you hear. Write full, not contracted, forms.
1	4
2	5
3	6
NOW YOU CAN Take responsibility for a mist	Ideas
A CONVERSATION ACTIVATOR Role-play a new of partner, taking responsibility for a different m your own ideas) and the past unreal condition  A: Sorry I	You were late for something. You forgot to do something. You missed a meeting. You missed a meeting. You missed someone's hirthday.
B: What happened?	Some reasons for a mind
A: I'm ashamed to say I just	You forgot to write
B: Don't worry. That can happen to anyone.  A: Well, if I, I have	Continue the You wrote down the wrong date
B: No harm done	conversation. You just got too busy and to
	Someone stole your labour.
B CHANGE PARTNERS Take responsibility for an	nother mistake.  purse / date book].  Another reason:

VIDEO COACH

#### **BEFORE YOU LISTEN**



▶ 4:29 VOCABULARY • More descriptive adjectives Read and listen. Then listen again and repeat.









low-tech / high-tech

wacky

unique

efficient / inefficient

Complete the chart with the correct adjective and one product or invention you know.

Definition	Adjective	A product or invention		
the only one of its kind				
pretty silly		a managara sa		
doesn't use modern technology				
uses modern technology				
doesn't waste time, money, or energy		1		
wastes time, money, or energy				

#### LISTENING COMPREHENSION

▶4.30 LISTEN TO DRAW CONCLUSIONS Listen and write the number of the conversation next to the invention each person should have had.













▶ 4:31 LISTEN TO SUMMARIZE Listen again and then write each problem in your own words.

1 ..... 2 ...... 3 ..... 4 .....

C DISCUSSION Describe each of the inventions. Use one or more of the adjectives from the Vocabulary above and from page 88. Listen again if necessary.

It's not a novel idea, but the Pet Exit is both low-tech and efficient. It doesn't need electronics or machinery.



A FRAME YOUR IDEAS Read the checklist and check the boxes of at least five categories where you think new inventions are needed.

#### What Do We Need New Inventions For? for safety in the car for reading faster for safety at home for preparing for a natural disaster for organizing things at home for writing at the office for cooking and preparing food for training office staff for eating or snacking for communicating with colleagues for getting into shape for learning new English words and grammar for raising children for preparing for tests for taking care of pets (your own idea) for relaxing at home

**B NOTEPADDING** Imagine an invention for five situations you checked. On the notepad, write a description and benefit of each invention.

etereija wander da e M.av eeroe et ere caused by virused esichae	Descriptions of your inventions a wake-up alarm in the car	Benefits so you don't fall asleep while driving
Descriptions of your inventions	Benefits	39 x30 x 00 x 00 x
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		

C PROJECT Work in small groups. Choose one invention from someone's chart. Give it a name, draw a picture of it, and write an advertisement for it. Include real and unreal conditional sentences in your ad. (For fun, the invention can be low-tech, high-tech, wacky, or even impossible! The name can be funny.)

# top-of-the-line innovative high-tech / low-tech wacky

high-end state-of-the-art cutting-edge first-rate wacky unique efficient / inefficient novel revolutionary

D GROUP WORK Present your ads to the class.

If I were you, I'd get the new revolutionary
"Drive Awake" alarm. You'll never have to
worry about falling asleep while driving
your car. Be safe.
Stay awake with
the Drive Awake
Alarm.

If she had bought the
state-of-the-art

If she had bought the state-of-the-art
"EAR-RINGS," she would have gotten your phone call. Very practical!

#### BEFORE YOU READ

**WARM-UP** In your opinion, what has been the most important medical discovery in history? Explain your reason(s).

READING ▶4:32

## **Antibiotics**

Today, vaccines can prevent some of the infectious diseases that in the past resulted in serious illness and death. Fortunately, for diseases caused by bacteria (tiny organisms that can only be seen by microscope), vaccines can make the difference between life and death.

#### What are antibiotics?

Antibiotics are substances that work in one of two ways. Some antibiotics, such as penicillin, kill disease-causing bacteria. Others, such as tetracycline, stop them from multiplying.

#### History

In 1675, Dutch scientist Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek, using a microscope, discovered the existence of microorganisms. However, it wasn't known that they could cause disease until French scientist



Fleming examines the behavior of penicillium in a petri dish.

Louis Pasteur confirmed that approximately 200 years later. Finally, in 1928, British scientist Alexander Fleming noticed that a mold, penicillium, growing in one of his petri dishes, was capable of killing bacteria, and the development of antibiotics became possible. Fleming named the active agent in the mold "penicillin" but was unable to create a drug from it.

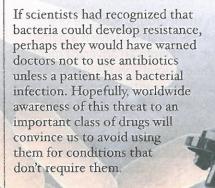
In 1940, during the Second World War, two scientists working at Oxford University, Ernst Chain and Howard Florey, were able to make an antibacterial powder from penicillin that was safe to use on humans. Penicillin was mass-produced for use on soldiers in the war. If there had been no penicillin, many would have died from bacterial

infections caused by their injuries and wounds. Soon penicillin was used for serious diseases such as pneumonia and tuberculosis, which had always caused many deaths. Fleming, Florey, and Chain received the Nobel Prize in 1945. Antibiotics changed medicine and continue today to enable people to survive conditions that would have killed them before the antibiotic age.

#### Overuse of antibiotics

Since their discovery and widespread use, antibiotics have been considered a wonder drug. Many common diseases, however, are caused by viruses, not bacteria, and antibiotics are not effective against them. Nevertheless, too many people use antibiotics regularly, believing they will cure viral illnesses such as common upper respiratory infections, colds, and sore throats. Why is this a problem?

First, it is a waste of money to use antibiotics to treat viruses. Our body's immune system eventually combats most viruses, and we recover without treatment. But more importantly, bacteria exposed to an antibiotic can become resistant to it, making the antibiotic less effective, or even useless. If antibiotics no longer work against infections and diseases, people will begin to die from them again.



Van Leeuwenhoek used a microscope to observe microorganisms.

Some	diseases	caused	by	bacteria
Tubercu	losis	1 1		

Plague Pertussis

Streptococcal sore throat (or "strep throat")

## Some diseases caused by viruses

Influenza (or "the flu") Polio

AIDS The common cold

Hepatitis

- FIND SUPPORTING DETAILS Answer the questions in your own words. Explain your answers, based on information in the Reading.
  - 1 What is the benefit of antibiotics?
  - 2 Why are antibiotics not effective against the common cold?
- 3 Why are antibiotics effective against strep throat?
- 4 What problem has overuse of antibiotics caused?
- **UNDERSTAND FROM CONTEXT** Choose the correct word to complete the sentence.
  - 1 (An antibiotic / A vaccine) prevents diseases from occurring.
  - 2 (Bacteria / Tetracycline) can cause infectious diseases.
  - 3 Bacteria are small organisms that can only be seen (in a petri dish / with a microscope).
- 4 (Penicillium / Penicillin) is a drug that kills bacteria.
- 5 The common cold and influenza are common (bacterial / upper respiratory) infections.
- 6 Some antibiotics are no longer effective because certain bacteria have developed (overuse / resistance) to antibiotics.



#### Discuss the impact of inventions / discoveries

FRAME YOUR IDEAS Look at some key inventions and discoveries and how they changed people's lives.



2000 BCE: The plow loosens and turns the soil so crops can be planted efficiently.

15th Century: Johannes Gutenberg invents typecasting, resulting in the printing press, which could print more than one copy of a book.





1796: The discovery by Edward Jenner of the process of vaccination made the first successful vaccine possible.







1940-1945: The first electronic computers, the size of a large room, enabled users to organize and examine information. The computer opened a new era of communications and research technology.

**NOTEPADDING** Write your ideas about how life was before and after each invention or discovery.

	What was life like before?	What was life like after?
the plow		
the printing press		
vaccination		
the zipper		
the computer		Text-mining (option

**GROUP REPORT** Present a report about an invention or a discovery to your class. Describe its impact in history. Use the past unreal conditional.

ee words or phrases in the Reading that were new to you. Use them in your Group Report. For example: "infections."

After the plow was invented, farmers could plant large areas. If it hadn't been invented, they couldn't have planted enough food to sell. 77

# REVIEW

A •4:33 Listen to people talking about new products. Match the name of each product with the best adjective to describe it.

Adjective
a top-of-the-line
<b>b</b> unique
<b>c</b> efficient
<b>d</b> cutting-edge

-	01 1 11				1	
В	Check th	e statement	that is	true for	each	situation.

1	We wouldn't have gotten lost if we had remembered to bring our portable GPS device.  We brought it, and we got lost.  We brought it, and we didn't get lost.  We didn't bring it, and we got lost.  We didn't bring it, and we didn't get lost.
2	If the salesclerk were here, she would explain how the Omni works.  The salesclerk is here, so she will explain how the Omni works.  The salesclerk is here, but she won't explain how the Omni works.  The salesclerk isn't here, but she will explain how the Omni works.  The salesclerk isn't here, so she won't explain how the Omni works.
3	If Ron had brought the Ultraphone with him, he would have already sent those e-mails.  ☐ Ron brought the Ultraphone, and he has already sent those e-mails.  ☐ Ron brought the Ultraphone, but he hasn't sent those e-mails yet.  ☐ Ron didn't bring the Ultraphone, but he has already sent those e-mails.  ☐ Ron didn't bring the Ultraphone, so he hasn't sent those e-mails yet.
C	omplete each conditional sentence with your own ideas.
	If the computer hadn't been invented,  If I had to decide what the most important scientific discovery in history was,
4	If most people cared about the environment,  Would new cars be less expensive if  If Ella had known that being a teacher was so hard,

#### WRITING

C

Choose one of the inventions or discoveries on pages 86, 94, or 95, or another invention or discovery. Describe the advantages, disadvantages, and historical impact of the invention or discovery you chose.

WRITING BOOSTER p. 152

- · Summary statements
- Guidance for this writing exercise







## **COMMUNICATION GOALS**

- 1 Talk about politics.
- 2 Discuss controversial issues politely.
- 3 Propose solutions to global problems.
- 4 Debate the pros and cons of issues.

## **PREVIEW**

# How politically literate are you? Test yourself to find out.

			the state of the last transfer of the state	
Choose	the correct term fo	r each definition. 1	hen look at the answers to	see how you did.
A group of people wh	ho govern a country		to win an election fo	a series of actions intended or a government position
The art or science of	f government	1 2.	campaign	vote
or governing  a constitution	politics			ment in which every citizen in the elect its government officials
A set of basic laws a		7	a monarchy	a democracy
country is governed be changed by the p	by, which cannot e	easily	A system in which a king or queen	country is ruled by a
a constitution	a democrac	y 🌘	a dictatorship	a monarchy
An occasion when p		se Co	Government by a ru	ler who has complete power
someone for an office a government	cial position an election		a democracy	a dictatorship
Show, by marking a		13	A country ruled by a power is limited by	king or a queen whose a constitution
want in a governmen	nt position			a constitutional monarc
want in a governmend govern	nt position  vote	401	emocracy	n election Svote Gcampaign 70 d monarchy 9 a dictatorship 10 a co
govern	vote	pgy Read and lis	s a constitution emocracy	WERS: 1 a government 2 politics 3 election 5 vote 6 campaign 7 a d monarchy 9 a dictatorship 10 a co
☐ govern	□ vote  Political terminolo	ogy Read and lis	ห้วยเวอนขอ นอเมนุมุรยอว ย ยู ten. Then listen again ar	WERS: 1 a government 2 politics 3 election 5 vote 6 campaign 7 a d monarchy 9 a dictatorship 10 a co
govern	vote		ห้วยเวอนอ นอกกุกกุรแอว b ย ten. Then listen again ar an election v	nd repeat.
■ govern  5:02 VOCABULARY •  a government campaign	Political terminolo politics a democracy  uch do you know	a constitution a monarchy about world po	ก็วยววดพอ นอกกุกกุกระบอว ย iten. Then listen again ar an election v a dictatorship a	oss and write the name of
govern  5:02 VOCABULARY  a government campaign  PAIR WORK How me	Political terminology politics a democracy  uch do you know for each type of g	a constitution a monarchy about world po government. The	fice in the chart, discontinuous of the chart, discontinuo	opport divisional polarity of five sections and write the name of other classmates.
a govern  a government campaign  PAIR WORK How meat least one country	Political terminology politics a democracy  uch do you know for each type of g	a constitution a monarchy about world po government. The	fice in compare charts with compare charts wit	opport divisional polarity of the classmates.

#### ▶ 5:03 PHOTO STORY Read and listen to a conversation about discussing politics.



Paul: What a coincidence! I was just thinking about calling you. It's been such a long time.

Carlo: It sure has. Let's sit down and catch up. . . . What are you up to these days?

Paul: Busy, busy. The office has been crazy, with the election coming up next month. You can imagine.



Carlo: But I'll bet working at a TV station is exciting. . . . Hey, Paul, do you mind if I ask you a political question? I hope it's not inappropriate. I'm not sure it's polite to ask about politics here in the U.S.

Paul: That's funny. They always say not to talk about religion or politics, but everyone does. Shoot.



Carlo: OK. Who are you planning to vote for in the election?

Paul: Well, because we're friends, I'll answer. But I should warn you that it might not be a good idea to ask just anyone that question. Some people might find it a little personal.

Carlo: Oops.

Paul: No worries. Actually, I haven't made up my mind. I'm leaning toward Clancy, though. I think he's better than the other guy.

- **D PARAPHRASE** Restate each of the following sentences from the Photo Story in your own words.
  - 1 "Let's sit down and catch up."
  - 2 "What are you up to these days?"
  - 3 "Some people might find it a little personal." 6 "I'm leaning toward Clancy . . . "
- 4 "No worries."
- 5 "Actually, I haven't made up my mind."
- E THINK AND EXPLAIN Answer the questions, based on your understanding of the Photo Story.
  - 1 Why does Paul say "What a coincidence!" when he sees Carlo?
  - 2 What does Paul mean when he says, "Busy, busy. The office has been crazy."
  - 3 Why does Carlo ask whether Paul minds if he asks him a political question?
  - 4 Why does Paul warn Carlo not to ask some people about their political opinions?

#### **SPEAKING** Discussion topics

- 1 Do you like to talk about politics? Do you think politics is a good topic for discussion with "just anybody"? Or is politics always "a little too personal"? Explain.
- 2 Review the types of government from page 98. Do you think every country should have the same form of government? Why don't all countries have the same form of government? In your opinion, is there a "best" form of government? Explain.



#### GRAMMAR Non-count nouns that represent abstract ideas

Nouns that represent abstract ideas are always non-count nouns.

Education is an important issue.

NOT: The education is an important issue.

NOT: Educations are an important issue.

News about politics is always interesting.

NOT: News about the polities is always interesting.

NOT: News about politics are always interesting.

#### Nouns for abstract ideas

justice advice progress crime life proof education news success health patience time peace work information politics investment poverty

GRAMMAR BOOSTER p. 141

 Count and non-count nouns: review and extension

- A GRAMMAR PRACTICE Choose the correct form of the nouns and verbs.
  - 1 Our (advice / advices) to you (is / are) to avoid discussing politics.
  - 2 (Poverty / The poverty) (was / were) the topic of the international conference.
  - 3 Both candidates have programs for (the health / health) and (educations / education).
  - 4 Making (peace / the peace) takes a lot of (work / works) and a long time.
  - 5 Good news (is / are) hard to find in the newspaper these days.
- B GRAMMAR PRACTICE Correct the errors.

#### information

Here's some political informations about the election. The good news are that both candidates have programs for the education. The liberal candidate, Bill Slate, says financial helps for the schools are a question of the justice. The poverty has affected the quality of the schools, and students from schools in poor areas don't have a success. Joanna Clark, the conservative candidate, disagrees. She believes a progress has been made by investing in the teacher education. Her advices are to keep the old policy. "Creating better schools takes the time and a patience," she says.



## VOCABULARY A continuum of political and social beliefs

A **S** 5.04 Read and listen. Then listen again and repeat.

**radical** adj. supporting complete political or social change —a radical n.

**liberal** *adj.* supporting changes in political, social, or religious systems that respect the different beliefs, ideas, etc., of other people —a liberal *n*.

**moderate** *adj.* having opinions or beliefs, especially about politics, that are not extreme and that most people consider reasonable or sensible —a **moderate** *n*.

**conservative** *adj.* preferring to continue to do things as they have been done in the past rather than risking changes —a **conservative** *n*.

**reactionary** adj. strongly opposed to political or social change —a reactionary n.

**B** LISTEN TO INFER AND ACTIVATE VOCABULARY Listen to each conversation. Then, with a partner, complete the chart. Listen again, if necessary, to check your work or settle any disagreements.

4	radical	liberal	moderate	conservative	reactionary
1 He's	0	0	0	0	•
2 She's	•	0	0	0	
3 He's	0	0	0	0	
4 She's		0	0	0	
5 He's	•	0	0	0	

#### CONVERSATION MODEL

- ▶ 5:06 Read and listen to a conversation about politics.
  - A: Do you mind if I ask you a political question?
  - B: No problem. What would you like to know?
  - A: Well, are you a liberal or a conservative?
  - B: Actually, I'm neither. I like to make up my mind based on the issue.
  - A: So, would you say you're an independent?
  - B: I guess you could say that.

#### If you don't want to answer . . .

- B: No offense, but I feel a little uncomfortable talking about that. I hope you don't mind.
- A: Absolutely not. It's a good thing I asked.





#### PRONUNCIATION Stress to emphasize meaning

- ▶ 5:08 Listen to the different intonations of the same sentence. Then listen again and repeat.
  - 1 Are you a conservative? (normal stress—no special meaning)
  - 2 Are you a conSERVative? (I'm surprised that you would have such a belief.)
  - 3 Are YOU a conservative? (I'm surprised that you, among all people, would be a conservative.)
  - 4 ARE you a conservative? (I think you might be a conservative, and I'd like to be sure.)
- PAIR WORK Practice varying the stress in this statement: "Would you say you're an independent?" Discuss the different meanings.

## NOW YOU CAN Talk about politics

PAIR WORK Which political questions do you think would be too personal or controversial to ask?

What advice would you like to give the president / prime minister / king / queen?
What do you think about the president / prime minister / king / queen?
What do you think about our government's policies?
Are you liberal or conservative?
Who are you voting for in the election?

- CONVERSATION ACTIVATOR With a partner, change the Conversation Model to bring up a topic that might be controversial. Partner B can answer or decline to discuss the question. Then change roles.
- A: Do you mind if I ask you a political question?
- B: No problem. What would you like to know?
- A: Well, .....?
- B: Actually, ......

#### DON'T STOP!

Ask other political questions.

CHANGE PARTNERS Discuss another political subject.

## CONVERSATION MODEL

- A © 5:09 Read and listen to a polite conversation about a controversial issue.
  - A: How do you feel about capital punishment?
  - **B:** I'm in favor of it. I believe if you kill someone, you deserve to be killed. What about you?
  - A: Actually, I'm against the death penalty. I think it's wrong to take a life, no matter what.
  - B: Well, I guess we'll have to agree to disagree!
- B S:10 RHYTHM AND INTONATION Listen again and repeat. Then practice the Conversation Model with a partner.
- C **DISCUSSION** Are you in favor of capital punishment? Explain.



#### ▶ 5:11 Disagreement

I guess we'll have to agree to disagree. Really? I have to disagree with you there. Do you think so? I'm not sure I agree. Well, I'm afraid I don't agree. No offense, but I just can't agree.

#### ▶ 5:12 Agreement

I agree with you on that one. I couldn't agree more. I couldn't have said it better myself. That's exactly what I think.

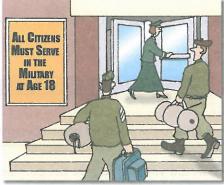
## FLASH

#### **VOCABULARY** Some controversial issues

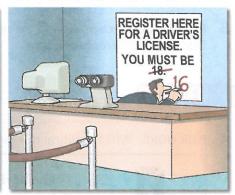
A > 5:13 Read and listen. Then listen again and repeat.



censorship of books and movies



compulsory military service



lowering the driving age



raising the voting age



prohibiting smoking indoors

- ▶ 5:14 LISTEN TO ACTIVATE VOCABULARY Listen to people's opinions about controversial issues. Complete the chart with each issue they discuss. Use the Vocabulary.
- C > 5:15 LISTEN TO INFER Now listen again and check For or Against in the chart, according to what the person says.

	The issues they discuss	For	Against
1			
2			
3	9	1 1 1 1	
4			
5			

#### **GRAMMAR** Verbs followed by objects and infinitives

Certain verbs can be followed by infinitives, but some verbs must be followed by an object before an infinitive.

The newspaper reminded all eighteen-year-olds to vote. We urged them to write letters against the death penalty.

These verbs cannot be followed by an object. However, they can be followed directly by an infinitive.

agree appear can't afford can't wait decide deserve

hope learn manage need offer plan

pretend refuse seem

Verbs followed by an object before an infinitive:

advise allow cause

convince

encourage invite permit persuade

remind request require tell

urge warn

GRAMMAR BOOSTER p. 141

Gerunds and infinitives: review of

- · form and usage
- usage after certain verbs
- **GRAMMAR PRACTICE** Complete each statement or question with an object and an infinitive.
  - 1 The newspaper advised .... all voters to register .... early for the next election. all voters / register
  - 2 Did you remind ...... ...... her voter registration card? your daughter / complete
  - 3 We persuaded .....our friends / vote ..... for our candidate.
  - 4 Our teacher always encourages ...... ..... every night, not just the day before the exam. students / study
  - 5 Can't we convince ........ ..... taxes on property? legislators / lower
- GRAMMAR PRACTICE Write two sentences using verbs that can be followed directly by an infinitive and two sentences with verbs that must have an object before an infinitive.

## NOW YOU CAN Discuss controversial issues politely



**CONVERSATION ACTIVATOR** With a partner, change the Conversation Model, giving a reason for your point of view. Use the Vocabulary and expressions of Agreement and Disagreement from page 102. Then change roles and issues.

A: How do you feel about ......?

B: ......... What about you?

A: Actually, I ......... . I think ........ .

B: .....

#### DON'T STOP!

Ask your partner's opinion of other issues.

CHANGE PARTNERS Discuss another issue, giving reasons to support your opinion.

#### RECYCLE THIS LANGUAGE.

I'm against I'm in favor of

I think / believe / feel:

it's wrong.

it's right.

it's wrong, no matter what.

it depends.



#### **BEFORE YOU READ**

**EXPLORE YOUR IDEAS** What is the difference between a problem and a global problem? Do you think your generation faces more serious global problems than the generation of your parents or grandparents? Explain.

#### READING ▶ 5:16

The following issues were most frequently mentioned in a global survey about current world problems.

**CORRUPTION** People all over the world complain about the corruption of police, government officials, and business leaders. Two examples of corruption are:

- A police officer takes money (a "bribe") from a driver so he doesn't give the driver a ticket for speeding.
- A company that wants to do business with a government agency offers a public official money or a gift to choose that company for the job.

Some people feel that power promotes corruption and that corruption is unavoidable. But an independent media—for example, non-government-backed newspapers, television stations, and Internet blogs—can also play an important role in exposing corruption.

**POVERTY** Approximately one-fifth of the world's population, over 1 billion people, earns less than US \$1 a day. Each day, over a billion people in the world lack basic food supplies. And according to UNICEF, each day, 25,000 children under the age of five die of starvation or preventable infectious disease.

There are many causes of poverty, ranging from catastrophic natural events to bad economic and agricultural policies, so there's no one solution to poverty worldwide. Some people feel that wealthy nations must send aid to poorer nations, while others are concerned that nothing will help unless local corruption is reduced and bad government policies are changed.

**TERRORISM** Every day, we see or hear about suicide bombings and other violent acts committed against innocent people for religious or political reasons. Many ask why terrorism is on the rise.

Some social scientists believe that television and movies may contribute to growing anger. They claim that some people may feel frustrated and powerless when they measure their lives against the lives of extremely wealthy people they see in the media.

However, views about what causes terrorism can be very controversial, and many people disagree about its causes or possible solutions. While some feel that terrorism can be met with military force, others believe that people's extreme poverty and powerlessness must be reduced to make a difference.

**RACISM AND DISCRIMINATION Racism** (the belief that one's own race or ethnic group is superior to others) and racial and ethnic discrimination (treating members of other groups unfairly) exist in many places. These two common problems cause human rights violations all over the world. In some cases a more powerful ethnic or racial group justifies the domination and, horribly, even the complete destruction of ethnic or racial minorities they consider to be inferior. When taken to this extreme, genocides such as the European Holocaust and the massacre in Sudan have threatened to wipe out entire peoples.

Can racism and discrimination be eliminated—or are these simply unfortunate features of human nature? Many people believe that education can help build tolerance of the "other" and may contribute to creating a more peaceful world.

Δ	UNDERSTAND FROM CONTEXT	Match each definition with a word from the	hox

- .......... 1 a lack of necessary money to survive
- ....... 2 the attempt to destroy all members of a racial or ethnic group
- ......... 3 judging or harming people because of their racial or ethnic heritage
- ....... 4 money paid or some other reward given to a person to perform a dishonest or unethical act or to provide a favor
- ....... 5 the abuse of power by people in government or business
- ....... 6 the belief that other racial or ethnic groups are inferior to one's own

- a a bribe
- **b** genocide
- c poverty
- d corruption
- e discrimination
- f racism

**B** ACTIVATE LANGUAGE FROM A TEXT Based on the information in the Reading, cross out the one word or phrase in each row that is unrelated to the others. Explain your reasoning.

5	racism	business	discrimination	prejudice
4	hunger	starvation	domination	lack of food
3	bribe	corruption	discrimination	money
2	money	property	income	racism
1	people	politics	ethnic groups	races

- C CRITICAL THINKING Discuss each of the following.
  - 1 Reread the section on corruption in the Reading. What do all acts of corruption have in common? Do you think it is possible to end corruption, or do you feel that it is a part of human nature? Use specific examples in your discussion.
  - 2 What are some of the causes of poverty, and what are its effects?
  - 3 In your opinion, why do people engage in acts of terrorism? Is terrorism an expression of power or powerlessness and frustration? Provide examples to support your opinion.
  - 4 What reasons do people have to hate other groups? Is hatred of another group ever understandable, appropriate, or justified? Explain the reasons for your opinion.
  - 5 Do you see a single problem connecting all four issues in the Reading? If so, what is it?



## NOW YOU CAN Propose solutions to global problems

A FRAME YOUR IDEAS On a scale of 1 to 6, put the goals in order of importance and difficulty to accomplish (1 = most important or most difficult).

accomplish (1 = most important or most difficult).		
ORDER OF IMPORTANCE	GOAL	ORDER OF DIFFICULTY TO ACCOMPLISH
red	lucing poverty and hur	nger
	preventing terrorism	
	avoiding war	
enc	ling or reducing corrup	tion
	wiping out racism and ethnic discrimination	
	protecting human righ	ts

**B NOTEPADDING** Write some possible solutions to global problems.

	Problem	Possible solutions
	. 1	
-		
_		
-		

DISCUSSION Discuss the solutions to the global problems you proposed. Do you all have the same concerns?

#### **Text-mining (optional)**

Find and underline three words or phrases in the Reading that were new to you. Use them in your Discussion.

For example: "a bribe."

#### FLASH CARDS

#### **BEFORE YOU LISTEN**

A S:17 VOCABULARY • How to debate an issue politely Read and listen. Then listen again and repeat.









- **B** PAIR WORK Take turns saying and responding to each opinion. Use the Vocabulary above to disagree politely. Or, if you agree with the opinion, use the language of agreement from page 102. For example:
  - 1 "In some countries, dictatorship has helped stop corruption."

OR

- 2 "There is no real democracy. All governments are controlled by a few powerful people."
- 3 "I think moderates are the only people you can trust in government."
- 4 "I'm not going to vote. All the candidates are corrupt."
- 5 "Terrorism is getting worse and worse all over the world."
- 6 "I don't think it's important to vote. Nothing ever changes."

#### LISTENING COMPREHENSION

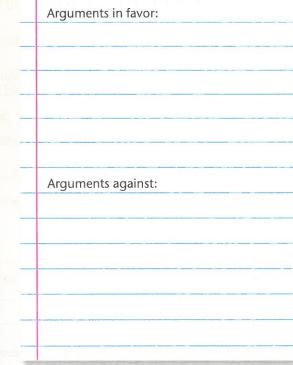
▶ 5:18 LISTEN TO SUMMARIZE Listen to three conversations about dictatorship, democracy, and monarchy. Then listen again and, on a separate sheet of paper, take notes about the arguments in favor of and against each system of government. Then work in pairs. Partner A: Summarize the arguments in favor. Partner B: Summarize the arguments against.

#### Debate the pros and cons of issues

GROUP WORK Choose an issue that you'd like to debate.



- · Banning text-messaging while driving
- · Decriminalizing the use of illegal drugs
- Preventing children from going to movie theaters to see extremely violent movies
- Using the military to fight terrorism
- · Permitting people to say or write anything as long as it doesn't cause physical danger
- Your own local or political issue:



NOTEPADDING On your notepad, write

arguments in favor and against.

Issue:

**DEBATE** Divide the group into two teams, with one team in favor and the other team against. Take turns presenting your views. Use the Vocabulary from page 106. Take turns and disagree politely. Then continue the discussion.



#### RECYCLE THIS LANGUAGE.

#### Discuss controversies

Are you in favor of \_\_\_? I'm against / in favor of \_\_\_. I think / believe / feel:

it's wrong.

it's wrong, no matter what. it depends.

it's right.

#### Express agreement

I agree with you on that one. I couldn't agree more.

I couldn't have said it better myself. That's exactly what I think.

#### Express disagreement

I guess we'll have to agree to disagree! I have to disagree with you there. I'm not sure I agree. I'm afraid I don't agree. No offense, but I can't agree.

- ▶ 5:19 Listen to the news report about four news stories. Then listen again and circle the correct word or phrase.
  - 1 Sorindians and Ramays are two (ethnic groups / governments) that occupy land areas next to each other.
  - 2 (Sorindians / Ramays) want to be able to observe their dietary laws and traditional clothing customs.
  - 3 The problem between the Sorindians and the Ramays is an example of (corruption / ethnic discrimination).
  - 4 A package left in the bathroom at the central post office raised fears of (terrorism / corruption).
  - 5 Poor people are migrating into the (city from the countryside / countryside from the city).
  - 6 Another story in the news is the reported (corruption / poverty) of a police captain.
- Complete the paragraph about an election, using verbs and count and non-count nouns correctly.

Many1 candidate / candidate	running for election make2 promise /	about promises
3 education / the education	t comes slowly, a 4 progress / the progress	and
6 is / are hard	to get. Voters would like to see	oof / proofs
8 advice / advices	9 is / are	stance, we are just now
receiving	of education statistics andws	it's / they're
is no	eeded, andis ned 13 the time / time	cessary to improve our schools.

- Complete each sentence.
  - 1 The law doesn't allow ...... the Constitution.
    - a the president change
- b the president to change c change

4 The election committee permitted ...... about their educational policies.

- 2 Our friends advised ...... disappointed about the election.
  - a not to be
- b us not to be
- c us to be not
- 3 The Constitution requires ...... office after two terms.
  - **b** senators to leave
- c senators leave

- a to leave

- a the candidates to speak b the candidates speak
- c to speak
- Disagree politely with each statement, using a different way to disagree each time. Then add a reason why you disagree with each statement.
- 1. That's one way to look at it, but ...

1 Monarchies are dictatorships.

YOU

2 There's no such thing as a real democracy anywhere in the world. YOU

3 All people with power are corrupt. YOU

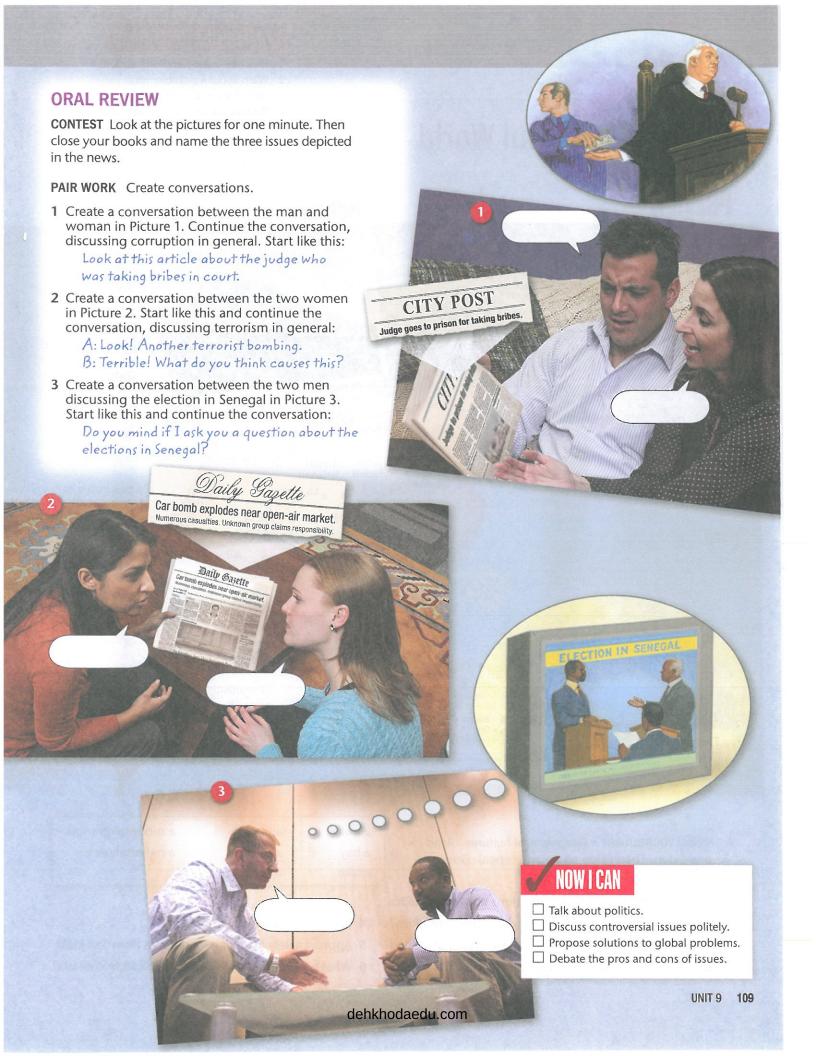


#### WRITING

Write at least two paragraphs about one of these issues: compulsory military service, capital punishment, or censorship of books and movies. Include both the pros and cons of the issue.

WRITING BOOSTER p. 152

- Contrasting ideas
- · Guidance for this writing exercise



## **COMMUNICATION GOALS**

- 1 Describe a geographical location.
- 2 Warn about a possible risk.
- 3 Describe a natural setting.
- 4 Discuss solutions to global warming.

# Beautiful World



- A **S**:22 **VOCABULARY Geographical features** Read and listen. Then listen again and repeat. Find these features on the map.
- B Use the map to answer the questions about Costa Rica.
  - 1 What two countries share a border with Costa Rica?
  - 2 In what mountain range is Costa Rica's capital located?
  - 3 What is Costa Rica's largest national park?

a gulf	an ocean	a mountain range
a bay	a sea	a national park
a lake	a volcano	

- 4 What is Costa Rica's largest lake?
- 5 Approximately how far is Puntarenas from San José?
- 6 What bodies of water are on Costa Rica's two coasts?

Understand English speakers from different language backgrounds. Max = Italian speaker Frank = Chinese speaker

C >5:23 PHOTO STORY Read and listen to two tourists talking about Costa Rica.



Max: Have you folks been here long?
Frank: A little over a week. Unfortunately, we've only got two days left. You?

Max: We just got here yesterday, actually.

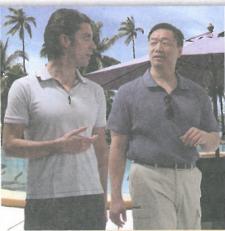
Frank: I'm Frank, by the way. Frank Lew. From Hong Kong.

Max: Max Belli. From Labro, Italy. Have

you heard of it?

Frank: I can't say I have.

Max: It's a very small town about 20 kilometers north of Rome.



Max: Hey, you wouldn't happen to know anything about the La Fortuna waterfall, would you? We plan on driving up there this weekend.

Frank: Actually, we just got back from there yesterday.

Max: What a coincidence! Was it worth seeing?

Frank: Spectacular. You don't want to miss it.



Frank: But be sure to take it slow on the path down to the bottom of the falls. It can get pretty wet and slippery.

Max: Thanks for the warning. What if we want to get a look at the Arenal Volcano, too? Do you think that's doable in two days?

Frank: No problem. The volcano's only about twenty minutes west of La Fortuna by car. So I'm sure you could handle them both.

D	FOCUS ON LANGUAGE	Write each of the following statements from the Photo Story in your
	own way. Use the con-	text of the story to help you restate each one.

1	"I can't say I have."
2	"What a coincidence!"
3	"Was it worth seeing?"
4	"You don't want to miss it."
5	" be sure to take it slow."
6	"Do you think that's doable in two days?"
7	" I'm sure you could handle them both."

#### **SPEAKING**

A PAIR WORK Brainstorm and write the names of places you know for each of the following geographical features.

an ocean or sea	a national park
a bay or gulf	a lake
a mountain or volcano	a waterfall
a mountain range	a capital

**B GUESSING GAME** Describe a geographical feature of your country. Your classmates guess what place it is.

It's a beautiful lake. It's between ... "

#### GRAMMAR Prepositional phrases of geographical place

#### Look at the map and study the examples.

Mexico is north of (OR to the north of) Guatemala. Honduras and El Salvador are located to the south.

Tikal is in the north. Guatemala City is in the south. Cobán is located in the central part of Guatemala.

El Rancho is located on the Motagua River. Champerico is on the west coast of Guatemala. Flores is on the south shore of Lake Petén Itzá.

## A **GRAMMAR PRACTICE** Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

- 1 Vladivostok is located ....... the eastern coast ....... Russia.
- 2 Barranguilla is ...... the northern part ...... Colombia.
- 3 Haikou is ...... the northern coast ....... Hainan Island in China.
- 4 Machu Picchu is located about 100 kilometers northwest ....... Cuzco.
- 5 Vietnam is located south ...... China.
- **6** Kota Kinabalu is ....... the north coast of Borneo, a part of Malaysia.
- 7 Manaus is located ....... the Amazon River in Brazil.
- 8 Canada is ...... the north ...... the United States.
- PAIR WORK With a partner, choose five places you know in or near your country. Then describe and write where they are, using prepositional phrases of geographical location.

#### GRAMMAR BOOSTER p. 143

- · Prepositions of place: more usage
- Proper nouns: capitalization
- · Proper nouns: use of the



## ► 5:24 Compass directions

	i aso un ections
N = north	NE = northeast
S = south	Hortifeast
o - south	NW = northwest
E = east	CE HOLLIWEST
IN	SE = southeast
W = west	SW = southwest
	SOUTHWAST

Note: the **east** coast (OR **eastern** coast) Also: the [northern / southern / western] coast



## PRONUNCIATION Voiced and voiceless th

A >5.25 Read and listen. Then listen again and repeat.

Voiced th	Voiceless th	
1 there	thanks	
2 this	think	
3 northern	north	
4 southern	south	
5 the west	southwest	

**B PAIR WORK** Take turns reading the sentences you wrote in Exercise B above, paying attention to voiced and voiceless th sounds.

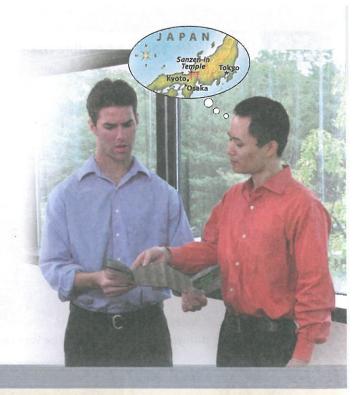
#### CONVERSATION MODEL

- ▶ 5:26 Read and listen to someone describing a geographical location.
  - A: Where exactly is the temple located?
  - B: About 15 kilometers north of Kyoto. Are you planning to go there?
  - A: I've been thinking about it.
  - B: It's a must-see. Be sure to take pictures!

► 5:28 Recommendations It's a must-see. You don't want to miss it.

▶ 5:29 Criticisms It's overrated. It's a waste of time.

▶5:27 RHYTHM AND INTONATION Listen again and repeat. Then practice the Conversation Model with a partner.



Great

## NOW YOU CAN Describe a geographical location



CONVERSATION ACTIVATOR With a partner, change the Conversation Model to talk about the location of an interesting place. Use the map and the pictures or a map of your own country. Then change roles.

A: Where exactly ...... located?

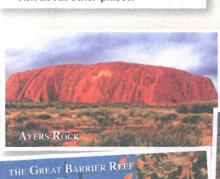
B: ...... Are you planning to go there?

A: I've been thinking about it.

B: ......

#### DON'T STOP!

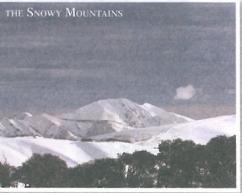
- · Ask more questions about the place. [Is it / Are they] worth seeing? Is [it / the trip] doable in [one day]?
- · Ask about other places.











CHANGE PARTNERS Describe other places.



#### **VOCABULARY** Describe risks

A \$\infty\$ 5:30 Read and listen. Then listen again and repeat.



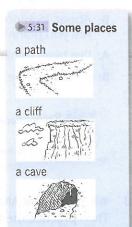
It can be quite dangerous.



It can be very rocky.



It can be extremely steep.



It can be so slippery.



It can be pretty dark.



It can be terribly exhausting.

4 He thinks walking on the cliffs is . . .



It can be really foggy.

▶ 5:32 Dangerous animals and insects

Watch out for [snakes].





a snake

a shark







a scorpion



a bear



a mosquito

▶ 5:33 LISTEN TO INFER Listen to the conversations. Check if the speaker thinks the place is risky or not.

		risky	not risky
1	He thinks hiking around the waterfall is		
2	She thinks climbing the mountain is		
3	She thinks swimming in the bay is		

**▶**5:34 **LISTEN TO ACTIVATE VOCABULARY** Listen again. Complete each statement with the risks.

1	He warns that the path is sometimes and
	there may be
2	She warns that there may be and that the
	path can be

3	He's worried that there will be a lot of	and
	there may be	

4	He warns that the cliffs are	 and there may
	he	

#### GRAMMAR Too + adjective and infinitive

Use too + an adjective and an infinitive to give a warning or an explanation.

It's too dark to go hiking now. = Don't go hiking now because it's dark. Those cliffs are too steep to climb. = You shouldn't climb those cliffs because they're very steep.

Use a for phrase to further clarify a warning or explanation.

It's too dangerous for children to go swimming there. (Only adults should swim there.)

GRAMMAR BOOSTER p. 145 Infinitives with enough

**GRAMMAR PRACTICE** Complete the sentences, using too + an adjective and a for phrase + an infinitive.

t's to that neighborhood alone.
dangerous / you / go
The pyramid at Teotihuacán is
steep / older tourists / climb
t's
The path is safely.
t's really hiking to the waterfall today
1



6 Don't you think this map is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_confusing / them / understand

#### CONVERSATION MODEL

- ▶ 5:35 Read and listen to someone warning about a risk.
  - A: Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the beach?
  - B: That way. It's not very far.
  - A: Thanks. Is it safe to go swimming there?
  - B: Sure, but be careful. There's sometimes an undertow.
  - A: Really?
  - B: Well, it's too dangerous for children to go swimming there. But I'm sure you'll be fine.
  - A: Thanks for the warning.
- ▶ 5:36 RHYTHM AND INTONATION Listen again and repeat. Then practice the Conversation Model with a partner.



## Warn about a possible risk

CONVERSATION ACTIVATOR With a partner, change the Conversation Model. Ask for directions to another place. Warn about possible risks. Then change roles.

A: Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to ......?

A: Thanks. Is it safe to ...... there? B: ......

CHANGE PARTNERS Warn about another place.

Ask for more information.

Do I need to watch out for [jellyfish / sharks]? Are there a lot of [snakes / bears]? Is the path very [steep / rocky / slippery]? [Is it / Are they] worth seeing?

Warn about other risks. Watch out for [scorpions]. It's too [dangerous / dark] [for \_\_ ] to \_\_ there.

a beach

a volcano a national park

cliffs

go swimming go hiking go climbing

go biking go skiing

#### **BEFORE YOU LISTEN**



► 5:37 **VOCABULARY** • **Describing natural features** Read and listen. Then listen again and repeat.

5:38 Strong positive adjectives
The scenery was breathtaking.
The views were spectacular.
The sights were extraordinary.

#### Geographic nouns









a canyon





a forest

a jungle

a valley

an is

an island a glacier

**Geographic adjectives** 











mountainous

hilly

flat

dry / arid

lush / green

**B** PAIR WORK Talk about places you know, using the nouns and adjectives from the Vocabulary.

The north of this country is pretty flat and arid, but in the south it's really mountainous. The green valleys and forests are spectacular.



#### LISTENING COMPREHENSION

- A **S** 5:39 **LISTEN FOR MAIN IDEAS** Read the questions. Listen to a description of a memorable trip and answer the questions.
  - 1 What country did Mr. Yamagichi visit?
    - a the U.S.
- b Australia
- c Canada
- d the U.K.

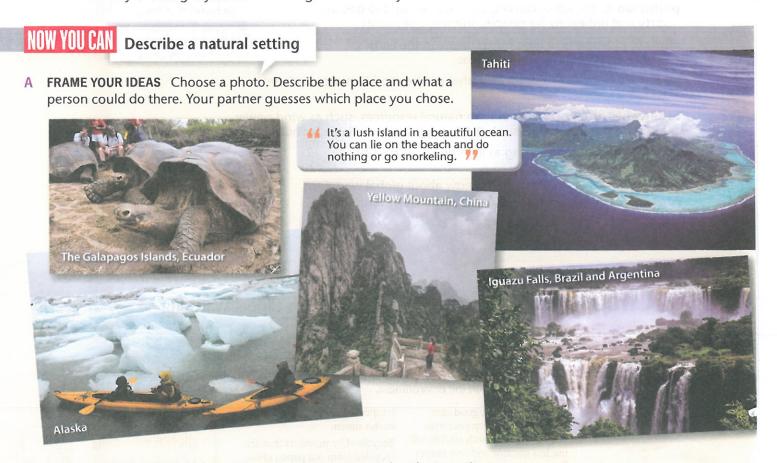
- 2 What kind of place did he visit?
  - a a park
- b a beach
- c an island
- d a jungle
- 3 What activity did he and his wife do the most?
  - a go skiing
- **b** go swimming
- c go hiking
- d go hang gliding
- 4 What geographical adjective best describes this place?
  - a flat
- b arid
- c hilly
- d mountainous



Mitsuhiko Yamagichi

В	■ 5:40 LISTEN FOR DETAILS Listen again a describes what he saw on his trip. Compl	nd pay attention to how Mr. Yamagichi ete each phrase with a word from the box.	air canyon	lake mountains
	1 amazing	5 fantastic	cliffs forests	path views
	2 breathtaking	6 fresh, clean	glacier	water
	3 extraordinary	7 slippery	hotel	waterfalls
	4 famous	8 spectacular		Transport Control

C PAIR WORK With a partner, summarize Mr. Yamagichi's trip in your own words by restating key details. Listen again if necessary.



**B NOTEPADDING** On your notepad, write about a spectacular place you know or a place you'd like to visit. What does it look like? What can you do there?

Name of place:	Things you can do there:
Description:	
	D
 3 3 3 3 4	

C PAIR WORK Tell your partner about the place you wrote about on your notepad. Use the Vocabulary.

## RECYCLE THIS LANGUAGE.

It's a must-see.

It's in the [north] / on the [coast].
It's located on the [Orinoco River].
It's located on the [shore / east coast]
of [Lake Victoria].
It's south of \_\_\_.
It's in the central part of \_\_\_.

You don't want to miss it.
[Bash Bish Falls] is overrated, but
[Niagara Falls] is breathtaking.
[Saw Valley] is a waste of time, but
[Pine Valley] is extraordinary.
It's very [rocky / steep / slippery].

#### BEFORE YOU READ

5:41 VOCABULARY • Energy and the environment Read and listen. Then listen again and repeat.

the environment n. the air, water, and land in which people, animals, and plants live

**pollution** n. the act of causing air, water, or land to become dirty and unhealthy for people, animals, and plants

**climate change** n. a long-term change in the Earth's temperatures and weather patterns

**power** n. electricity or other force that can be used to make machines, cars, etc., work

**renewable energy** n. power from natural resources, such as wind power or solar power (from the sun), that is continually available for human use

energy-efficient adj. using as little power as possible

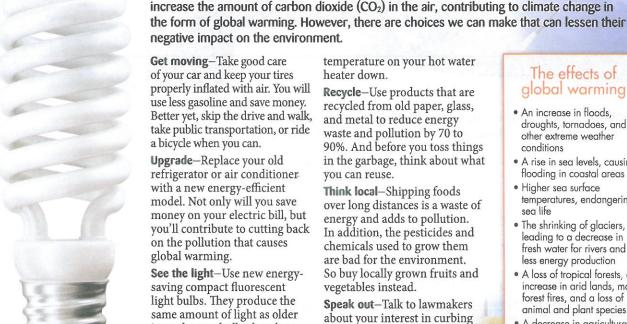
**DISCUSSION** What do you already know about global warming? What causes it? What effect is it having on the environment?

READING ▶ 5:43

▶ 5:42 Stress in verbs and nouns increase v. to become larger in amount an increase in [temperature] n.

decrease v. to become smaller in amount a decrease in [pollution] n.

## Choose Clean Energy and Help Curb Global Warming



Compact fluorescent light bulbs use less electricity.

Get moving—Take good care of your car and keep your tires properly inflated with air. You will use less gasoline and save money. Better yet, skip the drive and walk, take public transportation, or ride

Upgrade-Replace your old refrigerator or air conditioner with a new energy-efficient model. Not only will you save money on your electric bill, but you'll contribute to cutting back on the pollution that causes global warming.

See the light-Use new energysaving compact fluorescent light bulbs. They produce the same amount of light as older incandescent bulbs, but they use 75% less electricity and last much longer.

Cut back-Try to reduce the amount of water you use for showers, laundry, and washing dishes. And turn the temperature on your hot water heater down.

Fossil fuels such as oil, coal, and natural gas provide energy for our cars and homes, but

Recycle-Use products that are recycled from old paper, glass, and metal to reduce energy waste and pollution by 70 to 90%. And before you toss things in the garbage, think about what you can reuse.

Think local—Shipping foods over long distances is a waste of energy and adds to pollution. In addition, the pesticides and chemicals used to grow them are bad for the environment. So buy locally grown fruits and vegetables instead.

Speak out—Talk to lawmakers about your interest in curbing global warming. Support their attempts to improve standards for fuel efficiency, to fund renewable and clean energy solutions, such as wind and solar power, and to protect forests.

#### The effects of global warming

- An increase in floods, droughts, tornadoes, and other extreme weather conditions
- A rise in sea levels, causing flooding in coastal areas
- Higher sea surface temperatures, endangering sea life
- The shrinking of glaciers, leading to a decrease in fresh water for rivers and less energy production
- · A loss of tropical forests, an increase in arid lands, more forest fires, and a loss of animal and plant species
- A decrease in agricultural yields, leading to famine

Clean, renewable energy solutions like wind power can help curb global warming.

į	use your understanding of the words to write definitions.	
	l fossil fuels	4 reduce
	2 global warming	5 curbing
:	3 inflated	6 a rise
(	CRITICAL THINKING Discuss the questions.	
	1 The article mentions fossil fuels as a major source of er mentioned? How are they different from fossil fuels?	nergy. What two other sources of energy are
2	2 Look at the list of the effects of global warming in the aspects of your country's economy: tourism, food pro-	
	<b>SUMMARIZE</b> Review the Reading again. Then close your ways the Reading suggests you can help curb global war	
VOV	VYOU CAN Discuss solutions to global warming	
1	NOTEPADDING What do you do in your daily life that might contribute to the energy waste and pollution that causes global warming? Make a list on your notepad.	C DISCUSSION Do you agree with the suggestions in the Reading? Discuss the value of trying to take personal actions to help curb global warming. Talk about:
	at home:	<ul> <li>what you are doing now.</li> <li>what you'd like to do in the future.</li> <li>what you think is not worth doing.</li> </ul>
	at work:	Complete the locations, using the map.
	The same	RECYCLE THIS LANGUAGE.
	Telli del	Are you in favor of? I think / don't think it's a good idea to
	at school:	I'm against That's true, but
	A CONTRACTOR OF THE CONTRACTOR	I see what you mean, but Well, on the one hand, But, on the
	1-Inject	other hand,
	in transportation:	That's one way to look at it, but That depends.
		We'll have to agree to disagree.
		Text-mining (optional)
	other:	Find and underline three words or phrases in the Reading that were new to you. Use them in your Discussion.  For example: "a waste of energy."
	el sa cal solve	
	PAIR WORK Compare notepads with a partner. Discuss	
	what you think each of you could do to help cut down on energy waste and pollution.	
	on energy waste and polition.	
	I don't really recycle everything I can right now, but I'd like	
44	to the ball the control of the broken family and the control of the ball to the control of	
44	to. I think it would be better for the environment if I did.	s e
44	to. I think it would be better for the environment if I did. ""  ""  ""  ""  ""  ""  ""  ""  ""  ""	1155

dehkhodaedu.com

## REVIEW

A >5:44 Listen to the conversations. Write the type of place each person is talking about, choosing words from the box. Then check whether or not the person recommends going there.

a canyon	a desert	an island	a volcano
a cave	a glacier	a valley	a waterfall

	Type of place	Recommended?		
1		□ yes □ no		
2		□ yes □ no		

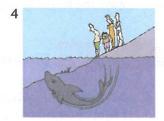
	Type of place	Recomm	nended?
3		$\square$ yes	□no
4		$\square$ yes	$\square$ no

B Look at the pictures. Complete the warnings about each danger, using too.









- C Complete the locations, using the map.
  - The town of Saint-Pierre is shore the island of Saint-Pierre.
     Grand Barachois Bay the village of Miquelon.
     The island of Saint-Pierre Langlade.
     The village of Miquelon about from the town of Saint-Pierre.
     The beaches the coast.

# Village of Miquelon St. Lawrence Gulf Grand Barachois Bay the beaches Island of Saint-Pierre North Atlantic Ocean Town of Saint-Pierre O 5 10 kilometers O 5 10 miles

#### WRITING

Write a description of your country, state, or province. Include the location and description of major cities, geographical features, national parks, and other points of interest. Use adjectives to provide details that help the reader see and feel what the places are like.

quiet / noisy	humid / foggy	spectacular
crowded	dry / arid	breathtaking
hot / warm	lush / green	extraordinary
cold / cool	steep / rocky	beautiful
mountainous	high / low	gorgeous
flat / hilly	green / blue	unique

WRITING BOOSTER p. 153

- · Organizing by spatial relations
- Guidance for this writing exercise

#### **ORAL REVIEW**

**GAME** Using the map and the pictures, describe a location or natural features. Your classmates guess the place. For example:

It's located south of Denali National Park. OR It has spectacular glaciers.

**PAIR WORK** Use the map and the "Explore Alaska!" chart to create conversations for the man and the woman. Start like this:

Where exactly is \_? OR Excuse me. Could you tell me the way to \_?







dehkhodaedu.com



- $\square$  Describe a geographical location.
- ☐ Warn about a possible risk.
- ☐ Describe a natural setting.
- $\square$  Discuss solutions to global warming.

UNIT 10 121

# **Reference Charts**

## PRONUNCIATION TABLE

Vowels		Consonants			
Symbol	<b>Key Words</b>	Symbol	Key Words	Symbol	Key Words
į	beat, feed	р	<b>p</b> ack, ha <b>pp</b> y	z	zip, please, goes
1	bit, did	b	back, rubber	J	ship, machine, station,
eī	date, paid	t	tie		special, discussion
3	bet, bed	d	die	3	measure, vision
æ	bat, bad	k	came, key, quick	h	hot, who
а	box, odd, father	g	game, guest	m	men
Э	b <b>ough</b> t, d <b>o</b> g	g tj	church, nature, watch	n	sun, know, pneumonia
OU	boat, road	ď3	judge, general, major	ŋ	sung, ringing
υ	b <b>oo</b> k, g <b>oo</b> d	dz f	fan, photograph	w	wet, white
u	boot, food, flu	V	van	1	light, long
٨	but, mud, mother	θ	thing, breath	r	right, wrong
Э	banana, among	ð	then, breathe	y	yes
3r	shirt, murder	S	sip, city, psychology		
aı	bite, cry, buy, eye		butter, bottle		
aυ	about, how	ţ t	button		
OI.	voice, boy				
ır	deer				
εr	bare	1 77 E			
ar	bar				
or or	door	Internal Entertain			
σr	tour	The second			

## **IRREGULAR VERBS**

base form	simple past	past participle	base form	simple past	past participle
oe	was / were	been	lend	lent	lent
become	became	become	let	let	let
begin	began	begun	lose	lost	lost
oite	bit	bit / bitten	make	made	made
oleed	bled	bled	mean	meant	meant
oreak	broke	broken	meet	met	met
bring	brought	brought	pay	paid	paid
build	built	built	put	put	put
ourn	burned / burnt	burned / burnt	quit	quit	quit
buy	bought	bought	read /rid/	read /rɛd/	read /rɛd/
catch	caught	caught	ride	rode	ridden
choose	chose	chosen	ring	rang	rung
come	came	come	rise	rose	risen
cost	cost	cost	run	ran	run
cut	cut	cut	say	said	said
do	did	done	see	saw	seen
draw	drew	drawn	sell	sold	sold
dream	dreamed / dreamt	dreamed / dreamt	send	sent	sent
drink	drank	drunk	sew	sewed	sewn
drive	drove	driven	shake	shook	shaken
eat	ate	eaten		sang	sung
fall	fell	fallen	sit	sat	sat
feed	fed	fed	sleep	slept	slept
feel	felt	felt	speak	spoke	spoken
fight	fought	fought	spend	spent	spent
find	found	found	spread	spread	spread
fit	fit	fit	stand	stood	stood
flee	fled	fled	steal	stole	stolen
fly	flew	flown	stick	stuck	stuck
forbid	forbade	forbidden	sting	stung	stung
forget	forgot	forgotten	strike	struck	struck
get	got	gotten	swim	swam	swum
give	gave	given	take	took	taken
go	went	gone	teach	taught	taught
grow	grew	grown	tell	told	told
have	had	had	think	thought	thought
hear	heard	heard	throw	threw	thrown
hit	hit	hit	understand	understood	understood
hold	held	held	wake up	woke up	woken up
hurt	hurt	hurt	wear	wore	woren up
keep	kept	kept	win	won	won
know	knew	known	write	wrote	written
leave	left	left			***************************************

#### VERB TENSE REVIEW: PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE

#### THE PRESENT OF BE

#### **Statements**

1	am / am not	
You We They	are / aren't	late.
He She It	is / isn't	

#### 2 THE SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE

#### **Statements**

I You We They	speak / don't speak	English.	
He She	speaks / doesn't speak	English.	

#### Yes / no questions

Do / Don't	you we they	know	them?
Does / Doesn't	he she	eat	meat?

#### Short answers

Yes,	you we they	do.	
	he she it	does.	

No,	you we they	don't.	
Non-	he she it	doesn't.	

#### Information questions

What	do	you we they	need?
When	does	he she it	start?
Who	does	she	like?
Who		wants needs likes	this book?

#### THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS

#### **Statements**

1	am	watching TV.
You We They	are	studying English.
He She It	is	arriving now.

#### Yes / no questions

Am	1	THE PLANE WITH
Are	you we	Surielas
	they	going too fast?
ls	she	

#### **Short answers**

	1	am.	
	you	are.	
	he		
Yes,	she	is.	
	it		
	you	are.	
	we	arc.	
	they		

	I'm not.
	you aren't / you're not.
	he isn't / he's not.
No,	she isn't / she's not.
	it isn't / it's not.
	you aren't / you're not.
	we aren't / we're not.
	they aren't / they're not.

#### Information questions

What	are	you we they	doing?
When	is	he she it	leaving?
Where	am	1	staying tonight?
Who	is		driving?

#### THE PAST CONTINUOUS 4

#### **Statements**

1	was / wasn't	singing that song.
You We They	were / weren't	playing the piano.
He She It	was /wasn't	leaving from Central Station.

#### Yes / no questions

Was	he she it	landing in Sydney when the storm began?
Were	we you they	adding in byuncy when the storm began:

#### Short answers

	l he she it	was.	160
Yes,	we you they	were.	No,

IGO T	he she it	wasn't.
No,	we you they	weren't.

#### Information questions

When	was	l he she	speeding?
Where	were	we you they	going?
Who	was		arriving?

#### 5 THE PAST OF BE

#### **Statements**

I He She It	was	late.
We You They	were	early.

#### Yes / no questions

	1	
Was	he she it	on time?
Were	we you they	in the same class?

#### **Short answers**

Yes,	he she it	was.	No,	he she it	wasn't.
	we you they	were.	3.103	we you they	weren't

#### Information questions

Where	were	we? you? they?	Them
When	was	he she it	here?
Who	were	they?	
Who	was	he? she? it?	ering alge

#### THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE 6

Many verbs are irregular in the simple past tense. See the list of irregular verbs on page 122.

#### **Statements**

1		
You		
He		
She	stopped /	working.
It	didn't stop	
We		
They		

#### Yes / no questions

Did	you he she we	make a good dinner?
	they	

#### **Short answers**

	1	
	you	
	he	
Yes,	she	did.
No,	it	didn't
,	we	arai. c
	they	

#### Information questions

When	did	you he she we they	read that?
Who	did	they	see?
Who			called?

#### 7 THE FUTURE WITH WILL

#### Affirmative and negative statements

I You He She It We They	will / won't	stop at five o-clock.
---	-----------------	-----------------------

#### Yes / no questions

Will	l you he she It we they	be on time?
------	---	-------------

#### Affirmative and negative short answers

Yes,	you	will.
No,	he she it we they	won't

#### Information questions

	I	
What will	you he she it we they	do?
Who will		be there?

#### 8 THE FUTURE WITH BE GOING TO

#### **Statements**

l'm You're He's She's It's We're They're	going to / not going to	be here soon.
--	----------------------------	---------------

#### Yes / no questions

Are	you we they	going to	want coffee?
Am	1	going to	be late?
ls	he she it	going to	arrive on time?

#### **Short answers**

Yes	1	am.
	you	are.
	he she it	is.
	you we they	are.

No,	I'm not.
	you aren't / you're not.
	he isn't / he's not. she isn't / she's not. it isn't / it's not.
	you aren't / you're not we aren't / we're not. they aren't / they're not.

#### Information questions

What	are	you we they	going to	see?
When	is	he she it	going to	stop?
Where	am	1	going to	stay tomorrow?
Who	is		going to	call?

#### 9 THE PRESENT PERFECT

#### Affirmative and negative short answers

I You We They	have / haven't	left.	
He She It	has / hasn't	unitrioselo acusao asilias	

#### Yes / no questions

Have	l you we they	said enough?
Has	he she it	already started?

#### Affirmative and negative short answers

Yes,	l you	have.
No,	we they	haven't.
Yes,	he	has.
No,	she it	hasn't.

#### Information questions

Where	have	you we they	seen the book?
How	has	he she it	been?
Who	has		read it?

#### 10 THE PASSIVE VOICE

	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
simple present	Art collectors buy famous paintings	Famous paintings are bought by art collectors.
present continous	The Cineplex is showing that film.	That film is being shown by the Cineplex.
present perfect	All the critic have reviewed that book.	That book has been reviewed by all the critics
simple past	Vera Wang designed this dress.	This dress was designed by Vera Wang.
past continous	Last year, World Air was still selling tours to the Ivory Coast.	Last year, tours to the Ivory Coast were still being sold.
future with <u>will</u>	The children will return the books tomorrow.	The books will be returned tomorrow.
be going to	Bar's Garage is going to repair my car this afternoon.	My car is going to be repaired by Bart's Garage this afternoon.

#### **GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES**

#### Verbs followed by a gerund

acknowledge	delay	escape	keep	propose	risk
admit	deny	explain	mention	quit	suggest
advise	detest	feel like	mind	recall	support
appreciate	discontinue	finish	miss	recommend	tolerate
avoid	discuss	forgive	postpone	report	understand
can't help	dislike	give up	practice	resent	
celebrate	endure	imagine	prevent	resist	
consider	eniov	iustify	prohibit		

#### Verbs followed directly by an infinitive

afford	choose	hesitate	need	promise	volunteer
agree	consent	hope	neglect	refuse	wait
appear	decide	hurry	offer	request	want
arrange	deserve	intend	pay	seem	wish
ask	expect	learn	plan	struggle	would like
attempt	fail	manage	prepare	swear	yearn
can't wait	arow	mean	pretend		

#### Verbs followed by an object before an infinitive\*

advise	convince	get*	order	remind	urge
allow	enable	help*	pay	request	warn
ask*	encourage	hire	permit	require	want*
cause	expect*	invite	persuade	teach	wish*
challenge	forbid	need*	promise*	tell	would like*
choose*	force		1.00		

<sup>\*</sup> In the active voice, these verbs can also be followed by the infinitive without an object (example: want to speak or want someone to speak).

#### Verbs followed by either a gerund or an infinitive

begin	hate	remember*
can't stand	like	start
continue	love	stop*
forget*	prefer	try*
	regret	

<sup>\*</sup> There is a complete difference in meaning when these verbs are followed by a gerund or an infinitive.

I remembered locking the door. (= I have a memory of having locked it.)

I remembered to lock the door. (= I didn't forget to lock it.)

I stopped smoking. (= I stopped the habit.)

I stopped to smoke. (= I stopped what I was doing in order to smoke.)

#### Adjectives followed by an infinitive\*

afraid	curious	disturbed	fortunate	pleased	shocked
alarmed	delighted	eager	glad	proud	sorry
amazed	depressed	easy	happy	ready	surprised
angry	determined	embarrassed	hesitant	relieved	touched
anxious	disappointed	encouraged	likely	reluctant	upset
ashamed	distressed	excited	lucky	sad	willing

<sup>\*</sup> EXAMPLE: I'm willing to accept that.

I forgot closing the window. (= I forgot that I did it.)

I forgot to close the window. (= I didn't do it because I forgot.)

# TOP NOTCH 3B Grammar Booster

Expressing the future: review	
These forms can express or imply the future:  The present continuous  My tooth has been killing me all week. I'm calling the dentist tomorrow What are you doing this afternoon? I'm going to the beach.  The simple present tense  The office is usually open until 9:00, but it closes at 6:00 tomorrow.  Although should, could, ought to, may, might, can, and have to are not a future action.  You could catch the next bus. We should call her next week.	
Read each sentence. Check the sentences that have future mea.  1 Hannah is studying English this month.  2 Nancy studies English in the evening.  3 You should call me tomorrow.  4 He might have time to see you later.  5 My parents are arriving at 10:00.	<ul> <li>aning.</li> <li>6 I'm taking my daughter out for dinner tonight.</li> <li>7 I'm eating dinner with my daughter. Can I call you back?</li> <li>8 The class always starts at 2:00 and finishes at 4:00.</li> <li>9 We may stay another week in Paris.</li> </ul>
Use will or be going to to make a prediction or to indicate that someth There is no difference in meaning.  Getting a new car will cost a lot of money. = Getting a new car is going.  Use be going to to express a plan.  My tooth has been killing me all week. I'm going to call a dentist. NOT Be careful! Will is also used for willingness. This use of will doesn't have cannot be used for willingness.  A: Is it true that you won't go to the dentist?  B: I'll go to the dentist, but I don't like fillings. NOT I'm-going-to-go to	g to cost a lot of money.  I -will-call a dentist.  Ve a future meaning. Be going to
B Complete the conversations, using will or be going to.  1 A: Would you like to go running in the park? I	e.

# UNIT 6 Lesson 2

#### Regrets about the past: wish + the past perfect; should have and ought to have

#### Wish + the past perfect

I wish I had married later in life. And I wish I hadn't married Celine! Do you wish you had bought that car when it was available?

#### Should have and ought to have + past participle

Ought to have has the same meaning as should have.

I should have married later in life. = I ought to have married later in life.

I shouldn't have married Celine. = I ought not to have married Celine.

Note: American English speakers commonly use  $\underline{\text{should have}}$  instead of  $\underline{\text{ought to have}}$  in negative statements and in questions.

A On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the statements and questions, changing wish + the past perfect to should have or ought to have.

She wishes she had had children. (ought to)

She ought to have had children.

- 1 Do you wish you had studied Swahili? (should)
- 2 I wish I had gone to New Zealand instead of Australia. (ought to)
- 3 Do you wish you had taken the job at the embassy? (should)
- 4 I wish I hadn't studied law. (should)
- B Answer each question with a statement using wish + the past perfect.
  - 1 Steven said, "I should have stopped smoking." What does Steven wish? He wishes he had stopped smoking.
  - 2 Lauren said, "I shouldn't have bought this car." What does Lauren wish?
  - 3 Carl's wife said, "You should have bought a convertible." What does Carl's wife wish?
  - 4 Ms. Baker said, "The students should have studied more for the exam." What does Ms. Baker wish? .....



Lesson 1

#### Adjective clauses: common errors

#### Remember:

Use the relative pronouns  $\underline{who}$  or  $\underline{that}$  for adjective clauses that describe people. Use  $\underline{that}$  for adjective clauses that describe things.

Don't say: Feijoada is a dish who is famous in Brazil.

Don't use a subject pronoun after the relative pronoun.

Don't say: Feijoada is a dish that it is famous in Brazil.

A On a separate sheet of paper, combine the two sentences into one, making the second sentence an adjective clause. Use who whenever possible. When it isn't possible, use that. Follow the example.

The hotel clerk was very helpful. / He recommended the restaurant.

The hotel clerk who recommended the restaurant was very helpful.

- 1 My cousin lives in New Zealand. / She called today.
- 2 We have a meeting every morning. / It begins at 9:30.
- 3 The celebration is exciting. / It takes place in spring.
- 4 The teacher is not very formal. / She teaches the grammar class.
- 5 Patients might prefer homeopathy. / They want to avoid strong medications.
- 6 The copy shop is closed on weekends. / It offers express service.
- 7 The hotel is very expensive. / It has three swimming pools.
- 8 Do you like the teacher? / He teaches advanced English.

#### Reflexive pronouns

#### A reflexive pronoun should always agree with the subject of the verb.

People really enjoy themselves at Brazil's Carnaval celebrations.

My sister made herself sick from eating so much.

#### Common expressions with reflexive pronouns

believe in oneself If you believe in yourself, you can do anything.

enjoy oneself We enjoyed ourselves on our vacation. feel sorry for oneself Don't sit around feeling sorry for yourself.

help oneself (to something) Please help yourselves to dessert.

hurt oneself Paul hurt himself when he tried to move the fridge. give oneself (something) I wanted to give myself a gift, so I got a facial.

introduce oneself Why don't you introduce yourselves to your new neighbors?

be proud of oneself She was proud of herself for getting the job. take care of oneself You should take better care of yourself. talk to oneself I sometimes talk to myself when I feel nervous. teach oneself (to do something) Nick taught himself to use a computer.

tell oneself (something) I always tell myself I'm not going to eat dessert, but I do. work for oneself Oscar left the company and now he works for himself.

B	Comp	lete the	sentences	with	reflexive	propouns
_	Comp	icte tile	2CHICELICE2	VVIUI	reliexive	promouns.

- 1 My brother and his wife really enjoyed ...... on their vacation.
- 2 My uncle has been teaching ...... how to cook.
- 3 The food was so terrific that I helped ...... to some more.
- with all my friends.
- 5 I hope your sister's been taking good care of ......
- 6 I was too shy to introduce ...... to anyone at the party.
- 7 Mr. Yu hurt ...... while lighting firecrackers for the Chinese New Year.
- Complete each sentence with one of the common expressions with reflexive pronouns. Then add two more sentences of your own.
  - 1 When did your brother ...... how to play the guitar?
  - 2 You'd better tell your daughter to stop playing near the stove or she'll
  - 3 I really hope you ...... when you're on vacation.
  - 4 ......

#### By + reflexive pronouns

#### Use by with a reflexive pronoun to mean "alone."

You cannot put on a kimono by yourself. You need help.

Students cannot learn to speak English by themselves. They need practice with others in English.

- Complete each sentence with by and a reflexive pronoun.
  - 1 Very young children shouldn't be allowed to play outside ......
  - 2 Did your father go to the store .....?
  - 3 How old were you when you learned to make breakfast .....?
  - 4 We got tired of waiting for a table at the restaurant, so we found one ......

#### Reflexive pronouns

itself myself vourself ourselves himself vourselves herself themselves

#### Reciprocal pronouns: each other and one another

Each other and one another have the same meaning, but one another is more formal.

People give each other (or one another) gifts.

Friends send each other (or one another) cards.

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite each underlined phrase, using a reciprocal pronoun. Then add one sentence of your own. Follow the example.

On Christmas, in many places in the world, people give and receive presents.

On Christmas, in many places in the world, people give each other presents.

- 1 On New Year's Eve in New York City, people wait in Times Square for midnight to come so they can kiss other people and wish other people a happy new year.
- 2 During the Thai holiday Songkran, people throw water at other people on the street.
- 3 During the Tomato Festival in Buñol, Spain, people have a lot of fun throwing tomatoes at other people for about two hours.
- 4 After a day of fasting during Ramadan, Muslims around the world invite other people home to have something to eat that evening.
- 5 (Your own sentence)

# UNIT

#### Lesson 2

#### Adjective clauses: who and whom in formal English

In formal written or spoken English, use who for subject relative pronouns and whom for object relative pronouns.

subject

The singer was terrible. + He sang in the restaurant.

The singer

who sang in the restaurant was terrible.

object

The singer was terrible. +

We heard him last night.

The singer

whom we heard last night was terrible.

Remember: An object relative pronoun can be omitted.

Be careful!

Reciprocal pronouns don't have the same

looked in a mirror or at a photo.) They looked at each other. (Each person looked at the other person.)

They looked at themselves. (Each person

meaning as reflexive pronouns.

The singer we heard last night was terrible.

Complete each formal sentence with who or whom.

- 1 The front desk clerk ..... works at that hotel is very helpful.
- 2 The man ...... I met on the plane has invited us to lunch.
- 3 The manager ...... lives in Singapore may apply for the job.
- 4 I'm very satisfied with the dentist ...... you recommended.
- 5 The guests ..... we invited to the dinner were an hour late.

- 6 The sales representative ...... you are going to call speaks English.
- 7 The singer ...... you told me about is performing tonight.
- 8 My friend ..... works at the bank can help you.
- 9 Is your colleague someone ...... I can ask to help me?

#### Real and unreal conditionals: review

· Real (or "factual") conditionals express the present or future results of real conditions.

Present or everlasting results: Use the present of be or the simple present tense in both clauses.

If I speak slowly, people understand me.

If the temperature of water rises above 100 degrees Celsius, it turns to steam.

Future results: Use the present of be or the simple present tense in the if clause. Use a future form (future with will or present continuous for the future) in the result clause.

If I'm late, I'll disturb the others at the meeting.

Unreal conditionals express the results of conditions that don't exist. Use the simple past tense or
 were in the <u>if</u> clause. Use <u>would</u> + a base form in the result clause. The order of the clauses can be
 reversed.

If I bought a more economical car, I wouldn't worry so much about the price of gasoline.

If he were here, he would tell us about his trip.

Remember: The order of the clauses in conditional sentences can be reversed. It's customary to use a comma after the if clause when it comes first.

If you buy a food processor, you won't need to buy a blender.

You won't need to buy a blender if you buy a food processor.

- A Correct the errors in the conditional sentences. More than one correct answer may be possible.
  - 1 If you will take a good picture, it can preserve memories of times you might forget.
  - 2 If I was you, I would send them an e-mail right away.
  - 3 If you would go out today, you'll need an umbrella.
  - 4 Most people would eat healthy food if they understand the consequences of eating too much junk food.
  - 5 These speakers will be OK if you used them in a smaller room.
  - 6 If the weather will be better, I'd go for a swim.
  - 7 If I would have a chance, I would work shorter hours.
  - 8 Will you ride a bicycle to work if your car broke down?
  - 9 What would you do if I would ask you to make dinner?
  - 10 He won't eat at that restaurant if they would tell him he had to wear formal clothes.

#### Clauses after wish

Use were or the simple past tense after wish to express a regret about something that's not true now.

I wish my laptop were top-of-the-line. (But it's not top-of-the-line.)

I wish I had a Brew Rite digital coffeemaker. (But I don't have one.)

Remember: Use the past perfect after  $\underline{wish}$  to express a regret about something that was not true in the past.

Sean wishes he hadn't sold his car. (But he did sell it.)

Sean wished he hadn't sold his car. (But he did.)

Use the conditional (would + a base form) after wish to express a desire in the present that something will occur in the future or on an ongoing basis.

I wish it would rain. (a desire for a future occurrence)

I wish it would rain more often. (a desire for something to occur on an ongoing basis)

Use would and a base form after wished to express a wish one had in the past for a future occurrence.

Yesterday I wished it would rain, but it didn't. (a past wish for a future occurrence)

- B Complete each statement or question with the correct form of the verb.

  - 2 Pat wished she ...... more time test-driving cars before she bought that SUV.

Remember: Conditional sentences have two clauses: an <u>if</u> clause and a result clause.

- Don't use a future form in an <u>if</u> clause. Don't say: If I will-be late, I'll disturb the others at the meeting.
- Don't use would in an if clause. Don't say: If he would-be here, he would tell us about his trip.

3	Most people wish they rich.
4	I wish it possible for me to get a better camera when I bought this one.
5	They wished they sooner that their computer was a lemon.
6	When I was a child, my parents wished I a doctor.
7	Do you wish you a more comfortable car for the trip tomorrow?
8	Marie and her friend are going to Germany tomorrow. Does she wish her friend German?
9	I wish you to bed earlier when you have to get up for work.

#### **Unless** in conditional sentences

You can use unless instead of if + not.

Unless they buy a freezer, they'll have to go shopping every day. (= If they don't buy a freezer, . . . )
She wouldn't go for a long drive unless she had a phone with her. (= ...if she didn't have a phone with her.)
Martin doesn't buy electronics unless they're state-of-the-art. (= . . . if they're not state-of-the-art.)

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the sentences, changing <u>if</u> + <u>not</u> statements to <u>unless</u> and making any necessary changes. Follow the example.

If you don't buy the Brew Rite coffeemaker, you'll have to spend a lot more money on another brand.

Unless you buy the Brew Rite coffeemaker, you'll have to spend a lot more money on another brand.

- 1 If you aren't in a hurry, you should walk.
- 2 If you don't care about special features, you shouldn't consider getting the top-of-the-line model.
- 3 She won't go running in the park if her friends don't go with her.
- 4 Claire won't buy a car if it doesn't have a high-tech sound system.



Lesson 2

#### The unreal conditional: variety of forms

Unreal conditional sentences can have a variety of active and passive forms in either clause.

If she had worn a seat belt, she wouldn't have been hurt.

If the car had been badly damaged, he would have bought a new one.

If the automobile hadn't been invented, we would still be using horses.

If horses were still being used, our high-speed highway system would never have been created.

If Marie Claire were getting married today, she wouldn't marry Joe.

If Ellie had married Tom, she would have children today.

On a separate sheet of paper, complete the unreal conditional sentences in your own way, using active and passive forms. Refer to the presentation above for some possibilities.

- 1 If I were elected ruler of a country, . . .
- 2 The car would have been invented earlier if . . .
- 3 If I were looking for a high-tech smart phone, . . .
- 4 If this laptop had been available when I was looking for one, . . .
- 5 ..., I wouldn't be studying English now.
- 6 If I were going to take a commercial space flight today, ...

#### Count and non-count nouns: review and extension

Count nouns name things that can be counted individually. They have singular and plural forms.

a president / presidents

a liberal / liberals

a candidate / candidates

a government / governments

an election / elections

a monarchy / monarchies

Non-count nouns name things that are not counted individually. They don't have singular or plural forms and they are not preceded by a or an. To express a specific quantity of a non-count noun, use unit expressions.

a piece of news

a cup of tea

2 kilos of rice

a time of peace

an act of justice

Many nouns can be used as count or non-count nouns, but the meaning is different.

She studied government at the university. (= an academic subject)

That country has had four governments in ten years. (= a group of people who rule the country)

Democracy is the best form of government. (= a type of government)

After the revolution, the country became a democracy. (= a country with a democratic system)

I love chicken. (the food, in general)

I bought a chicken. (one actual bird)

She has blond hair. (in general = all of her hair)

She got a hair in her eye. (= one individual strand of hair)

Complete each sentence with the correct form of each noun.

- 1 The government has made ...... with the economic situation.
- 2 They've given a lot of ...... to making the banks stable.
- 3 Unfortunately, ..... changed the law.
- ...... can only come if people stop making war.
- ......don't favor extreme change.
- 6 He's ...... who would like to outlaw freedom of speech.
- 7 If I could give you one piece of ....., it would be to vote.
- 8 If more people don't find ....., people will elect a different president.
- 9 Some ...... are more liberal than others.
- 10 It's impossible to end all .....poverty



Lesson 2

#### Gerunds and infinitives: review of form and usage

#### Form

Gerunds: A gerund is a noun formed from a verb. All gerunds end in -ing. To form a gerund, add -ing to the base form of a verb.

discuss -> discussing

If the base form ends in a silent -e, drop the -e and add -ing.

 $vote \rightarrow voting$ 

In verbs of one syllable, if the last three letters are a consonant-vowel-consonant\* (CVC) sequence, double the last consonant and then add -ing to the base form.

CVC

 $s i t \rightarrow sitting$ 

BUT: If the base form of the verb ends in -w, -x, or -y, don't double the final consonant.

blow  $\rightarrow$  blowing fix  $\rightarrow$  fixing say  $\rightarrow$  saying

\* Vowels = a, e, i, o, u Consonants = b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z

	than one syllable and ends in a conso f the spoken stress is on the last sylla	onant-vowel-consonant sequence, double able.	HOUSE Lesson
permit $ ightarrow$ permitting	g BUT order → ordering		The Water Street Co.
	s also a verbal noun. It is formed with ersuade $ ightarrow$ to persuade	1 to + the base form of a verb.	Oviju Provinci Ine riodsy Mile
	, objects, and subject complements v ny favorite activity. (subject)	within sentences.	It's in the Sahara Lee of the Allantic Country of the Mantic Country of the Mantic Country of the Mantic of the Mantic Country of th
I love <b>reading</b> about go	overnment. (direct object of verb <u>love</u> ) sting. (object of preposition <u>about</u> ) watching TV news. (subject compleme	ent after be)	ne description A
Infinitives function as sul To hang out all day dis I love to guess who's g	bjects, direct objects, and subject conscussing politics would be my favorite value to win elections. (direct object of	mplements. weekend activity. (subject) verb <u>love</u> )	Flacois et a 2 Tanjung Chris
My greatest dream for	the future is to work in the government	nt. (subject complement after <u>be</u> )	A DESCRIPTION OF A
	in the grammar presentation abound infinitives in the two ways show	ve as a model, write pairs of sentences on wn.	a separate sheet of paper,
1 voting		4 to permit	
a (as the subject	of a sentence)	a (as the subject of a senten	ce)
<b>b</b> (as a direct obje	ect)	<b>b</b> (as a direct object)	
2 smoking		5 to lower	
a (as a direct obje	ect)	a (as a direct object)	
<b>b</b> (as an object of	f the preposition <u>to</u> )	<b>b</b> (as the subject of a senten	ce) Market as lating 3
3 censoring	of the preposition <u>of</u> )		
<b>b</b> (as a subject co			
<b>b</b> (as a subject co	omplement)	no. The Facehouth Treater the Town of the	buildings and public pit c enginisation names and filing to 1 months 1 bo
b (as a subject co	omplement) ves: review of usage after certain	n verbs	buildings and public pit of a separations and titles days I months I be religious this total first and comes or all a separations.
b (as a subject co	omplement) ves: review of usage after certain ed by gerunds: cuss, dislike, enjoy, feel like, (don't) min	n verbs  nd, practice, quit, sick of, suggest  n, want, wish, would like	buildings and public pit of a continue and titles names and titles days I months I be religious.  Instactic process or all a continue are propositions (of), and propositions (of).
b (as a subject co	omplement)  ves: review of usage after certain ed by gerunds: cuss, dislike, enjoy, feel like, (don't) min by infinitives: , expect, hope, learn, need, plan, seem wed by either a gerund or an infinitiv	n verbs  nd, practice, quit, sick of, suggest  n, want, wish, would like	ew of gerunds and infinitives, eference Charts on page 126.
b (as a subject co	omplement)  ves: review of usage after certain ed by gerunds: cuss, dislike, enjoy, feel like, (don't) min by infinitives: , expect, hope, learn, need, plan, seem wed by either a gerund or an infinitiv like, love, prefer graph with gerunds or infinitives.	n verbs  nd, practice, quit, sick of, suggest  n, want, wish, would like	ew of gerunds and infinitives, eference Charts on page 126.
b (as a subject co	ed by gerunds: cuss, dislike, enjoy, feel like, (don't) min by infinitives: , expect, hope, learn, need, plan, seem wed by either a gerund or an infinitiv like, love, prefer graph with gerunds or infinitives. Value both forms.	nd, practice, quit, sick of, suggest  a, want, wish, would like  re:  When either a gerund or an infinitive would like es in my life, and I would like  2 start	by of gerunds and infinitives, inference Charts on page 126.  d be correct,  right away. I have
b (as a subject co	ed by gerunds: cuss, dislike, enjoy, feel like, (don't) min by infinitives: , expect, hope, learn, need, plan, seem wed by either a gerund or an infinitiv like, love, prefer graph with gerunds or infinitives. Very both forms.  some positive change make lot of people enjoy  3 compla	nd, practice, quit, sick of, suggest  a, want, wish, would like  re:  When either a gerund or an infinitive would  es in my life, and I would like  2 start  about the political situation, but they	d be correct,  right away. I have
b (as a subject co	ed by gerunds: cuss, dislike, enjoy, feel like, (don't) min by infinitives: , expect, hope, learn, need, plan, seem wed by either a gerund or an infinitiv like, love, prefer graph with gerunds or infinitives. Very both forms.  some positive change make lot of people enjoy  3 compla	nd, practice, quit, sick of, suggest  a, want, wish, would like  re:  When either a gerund or an infinitive would  es in my life, and I would like  2 start  about the political situation, but they	d be correct,  right away. I have
b (as a subject co	ed by gerunds: cuss, dislike, enjoy, feel like, (don't) min by infinitives: , expect, hope, learn, need, plan, seem wed by either a gerund or an infinitiv like, love, prefer graph with gerunds or infinitives. Value both forms.  some positive change make lot of people enjoy  anything about it. They love	nd, practice, quit, sick of, suggest  a, want, wish, would like  re:  When either a gerund or an infinitive would  es in my life, and I would like  2 start  about the political situation, but they  in  the news and  5 watch  6 say	w of gerunds and infinitives, inference Charts on page 126.  d be correct,  right away. I have don't like  they care about all
b (as a subject co	ed by gerunds: cuss, dislike, enjoy, feel like, (don't) min d by infinitives: , expect, hope, learn, need, plan, seem wed by either a gerund or an infinitiv like, love, prefer graph with gerunds or infinitives. Value both forms.  some positive change make lot of people enjoy  anything about it. They love who don't have enough to eat, but vorry about poverty, but they don	nd, practice, quit, sick of, suggest  I, want, wish, would like  I For a revie see the Re  When either a gerund or an infinitive would like  I start  I about the political situation, but they in  I the news and  I watch  I watch	w of gerunds and infinitives, eference Charts on page 126.  d be correct,  right away. I have don't like  they care about all nything to change the bid things they don't need
b (as a subject co	ed by gerunds: cuss, dislike, enjoy, feel like, (don't) min d by infinitives: , expect, hope, learn, need, plan, seem wed by either a gerund or an infinitiv like, love, prefer graph with gerunds or infinitives. Value both forms.  some positive change make lot of people enjoy  anything about it. They love who don't have enough to eat, but vorry about poverty, but they don	nd, practice, quit, sick of, suggest  I, want, wish, would like  The see the Reservice see the Reservi	w of gerunds and infinitives, eference Charts on page 126.  d be correct,  right away. I have don't like  they care about all nything to change the bid things they don't need

#### Prepositions of place: more usage

It's in

Cheju Province. the Rocky Mountains. the Central Valley. the Sahara Desert. the Atlantic Ocean.

the state of Jalisco.

It's on

the Nicoya Peninsula. Easter Island. the Hudson River. Coronado Bay. the coast. Lake Placid. the Gulf of Agaba.

It's in the central part

It's southwest It's about 50 kilometers north of Madrid.

A	Write the correct	prepositions of	of place.	using in.	on.	orc	of.
	TTITLE LITE COTTECT	PICPOSITIONS (	or pruce,	using in,	OII,	OI C	/1.

- 1 Pisco is ..... the Pacific coast of Peru.
- 2 Tianjin, in China, is ...... Hebei Province.
- 3 Desaguadero is ..... Lake Titicaca in Bolivia.
- 4 The island of Bahrain is ..... the Persian Gulf.
- 5 Cabimas is ..... Lake Maracaibo in Venezuela.
- 6 Sapporo is ...... Hokkaido Island in Japan.
- 7 Riobamba is ..... the Pastaza River in Ecuador.
- 8 Taiwan's Jade Mountain National Park is east .....the city of Alishan.
- 10 The city of Budapest, Hungary, is ..... the Danube River.
- 11 Denmark is north ...... Germany.
- **12** The capital of Chile, Santiago, is located ...... the Central Valley.

#### Proper nouns: capitalization

#### Capitalize names of:

places

Bolivia, the United Kingdom, Kyoto

languages / nationalities

historic times or events

French, Korean, Arabic

buildings and public places

the Paramount Theater, the Tower of London, the Golden Gate Bridge

organizations

the U.N., the World Bank, the European Union

names and titles

Mary, Mary Smith, Dr. Mary Smith Monday, January, the Moon Festival

days / months / holidays

Islam, Buddhism, Christianity

religions

the Cold War, the Middle Ages, the Edo Period

When a proper noun has more than one word, each word is capitalized, except for articles (the) and prepositions (of).

Panama City

Panama City

the Gulf of Agaba

Mount Fuji

the University of Buenos Aires

Niagara Falls

the Bay of Biscayne

Capitalize all the words of a title, except for articles and prepositions that have fewer than four letters.

If an article or a preposition is the first word of a title, capitalize it.

The Story of English Looking Back on My Life

The Story of English Looking Back on My Life
The Financial Times Looking Back on My Life
I Know Why the Caged Bird Sings

B On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite each sentence with correct capitalization. Follow the example.

i'm reading one hundred years of solitude.

I'm reading One Hundred Years of Solitude.

- 1 my cousins are studying french.
- 2 the leaning tower of pisa is in northern italy.
- 3 it's on the southern coast of australia.
- 4 i visit the city museum of art every saturday.
- 5 my uncle jack works for the united nations.
- 6 the channel tunnel between england and france was completed in 1994.
- 7 she graduated from the university of washington.
- 8 we liked the movie about the great wall of china.
- 9 my son is in the college of sciences.
- 10 his father speaks korean and japanese fluently.
- 11 their grandson was born last march.

#### Proper nouns: use of the

When a proper noun includes the word of, use the.

with the

without the

the Republic of Korea

Korea

the Gulf of Mexico

Mexico City

the Kingdom of Thailand

Thailand

When a proper noun uses a political word such as republic, empire, or kingdom, use the.

the United Kingdom

the British Empire

the Malagasy Republic

When a proper noun is plural, use the.

the Philippines the Netherlands

the United States the Andes Mountains

When a proper noun includes a geographical word such as <u>ocean</u>, <u>desert</u>, or <u>river</u>, use <u>the</u>. BUT do not use <u>the</u> with these geographical words: <u>lake</u>, <u>bay</u>, <u>mountain</u>, <u>island</u>, or <u>park</u>.

with the

without the

the Atlantic Ocean the Atacama Desert

Crystal Lake Hudson Bay

the Persian Gulf the Yangtze River

Yellow Mountain Hainan Island

the Iberian Peninsula

Ueno Park

When words like <u>east</u> or <u>southwest</u> are used as the name of a geographical area, use <u>the</u>. Do not use the when they are used as adjectives.

with the

without the

the Middle East the Far East Western Europe East Timor

the West Northern Ireland

When a proper noun includes a word that is a kind of organization or educational group, use  $\underline{\text{the}}$ . Do not use  $\underline{\text{the}}$  with a university or college (unless the name uses  $\underline{\text{of}}$ ).

with the

without the

the International Language Institute

Columbia College

the United Nations

Chubu University

the World Health Organization the University of Adelaide

#### Do not use the with acronyms.

U.C.L.A. (the University of California, Los Angeles) NATO (the North Atlantic Treaty Organization)

OPEC (the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries)

- C Correct the errors in the sentences. Explain your answers.
  - 1 When she went to the Malaysia, she brought her husband with her.
  - 2 A lot of people from United States teach English here.
  - 3 The Haiti is the closest neighbor to Dominican Republic.
  - 4 When we arrived in the Berlin, I was very excited.
  - 5 The Jordan is a country in Middle East.
  - 6 I introduced our visitors to University of Riyadh.
  - 7 I lived in People's Republic of China for about two years.
  - 8 Mr. Yan is a student at College of Arts and Sciences.
  - 9 She is the director of English Language Institute.
  - 10 She's the most famous actress in Netherlands.
  - 11 He's interested in cultures in Far East.
  - 12 The Poland was one of the first countries in the Eastern Europe to change to democracy.

# UNIT 10 Lesson 2

#### Infinitives with enough

You can use an infinitive after an adjective + enough to give an explanation.

She's old enough to vote. He's not busy enough to complain.

Be careful! Too comes before an adjective, but enough comes after an adjective.

It's too far to walk.

It isn't close enough to walk. NOT It isn't enough-close to walk.

- A On a separate sheet of paper, complete each statement in your own way, using an infinitive.
  - 1 He's tall enough . . .

4 She isn't hungry enough . . .

2 He isn't strong enough . . .

5 The movie was interesting enough . . .

3 She's thirsty enough . . .

- 6 The movie wasn't exciting enough . . .
- B On a separate sheet of paper, write ten sentences, using your choice of adjectives from the box. Write five using <u>too</u> and an infinitive and five using <u>enough</u> and an infinitive.

early	heavy	important	old	young	long
expensive	high	loud	sick	scary	short

# TOP NOTCH 3B Writing Booster

# UNIT **f** Dividing an essay into topics

Look at the picture in the Oral Review on page 73. The picture tells the story of the lives of Michael and Carlota. It is divided into three topics, each with a date and a topic heading. The headings help the viewer see at a glance how the story will be organized.

Similarly, if a piece of writing contains more than one section or topic, it is sometimes helpful to include **topic headings** each time a new section begins. Each topic heading signals the topic of the paragraph or section in the way a table of contents in a book tells a reader what the sections will be about.

A Read the short biography of famous Dutch painter Vincent Van Gogh. Write your own topic headings to divide the biography into sections.

# Vincent Van Gogh was born in a small village in Holland on March 30, 1853. He was an introverted child, and he didn't have many friends. But his younger brother, Theo, was one of them. As he grew up, Vincent became interested in drawing—and he was very good at it. In 1886, Vincent Van Gogh moved to Paris to live with Theo, who collected and sold paintings. In Paris, he met other artists and was influenced by their work. He also became interested in Japanese art and collected woodblock prints. In 1888, he moved to Arles, a town in southern France. The artist Paul Gauguin moved there, too, and they became good friends. But they didn't have much money. Van Gogh often became sad and could not paint. After a while, Van Gogh recovered and began to paint again. He sent some paintings to Paris, but he could not

sell them. Then, in 1890, early on a Sunday evening, Van Gogh went out to the countryside with his paints. He

took out a gun and shot himself in the chest. In his short, sad life, Van Gogh painted 200 paintings. He sold only one of them.

**B** Guidance for the Writing Exercise (on page 72) Use headings like these to organize your autobiography by topic. Under each heading, write notes of facts that belong in that section. Then refer to those notes as you write your autobiography.

#### Some headings:

My parents My birth My childhood My studies (other)

## UNIT 7 Descriptive details

To describe an event, be sure to provide descriptive details that express these four senses:

sight The fireworks are like beautiful red and yellow flowers in the sky.

There is a huge parade with thousands of people, and everyone is smiling.

sound As you walk down the street, you can hear music and people singing. The fireworks are as loud as thunder, and you have to cover your ears.

smell You can smell the meat grilling on the street.

Everything smells delicious, and you can't wait to eat!

taste The pastries are as sweet as honey, and you can't stop eating them.

The dish has the sour taste of lemon.

Try using these patterns in some of your details.

like

This traditional dessert looks **like** a beautiful white cloud.

as . . . a

When it is in season, this local fruit is as sweet as sugar.

so . . . that

The decorations in the street are so colorful that you feel like a child seeing them for the first time.

- On a separate sheet of paper, write a sentence that expresses one of the four senses for each of the topics. Try to use like, as . . . as, and so . . . that in some of your sentences.
  - 1 Describe a smell in someone's kitchen.
  - 2 Describe a sound in your classroom.
  - 3 Describe the taste of your favorite food.
  - 4 Describe the taste of something you liked as a child.
- 5 Describe something you see early in the morning.
- 6 Describe something you hear at a park.
- 7 Describe something you see at a park.
- Guidance for the Writing Exercise (on page 84) Write the names of the two holidays you chose. Then, under the name of each holiday, make a list of sights, sounds, smells, and tastes associated with it. Use these details in your writing.

#### UNIT Summary statements

When a piece of writing contains several paragraphs, the ideas are often summarized in a paragraph at the end. Including a final summary statement reminds the reader of the main ideas that were presented. Read the short essay to the right. Notice the summary statement at the end.

After a problem or a breakdown, many drivers say, "If I had only had a spare tire, I would have been able to fix it and be on my way in a few minutes." Here are the things responsible drivers should never forget. First, a flashlight with working batteries can help you repair your car in the dark. Second, a spare tire can save you hours of waiting for help. You can't change that tire without a jack. If your car breaks down at night, flares can warn oncoming traffic that you are stopped. And if your battery dies, jumper cables can help you start the car again.

No matter how high-tech a car you have, breakdowns can happen at a moment's notice. However, we can plan ahead and be equipped with some simple technology to prevent a problem from becoming worse.

Read the paragraphs and underline the main ideas. Then write your own summary statement.

There are a number of excellent presentation graphics technologies available today. Two well-known ones are Microsoft Office's PowerPoint™ and Macintosh's Keynote™. No matter which technology you use, here are some do's and don'ts that will make your presentation more successful.

First, the do's: Keep your slides concise. Keep the amount of text to a minimum because it's hard for the audience to focus on your main points if there's too much text. Use large letters (from 18 to 48 points) and simple, easy-to-read fonts. Use bullets to separate items in a list. Use just a few colors and keep that color scheme consistent throughout the presentation. If you project your slides in a bright room, light-colored text on dark backgrounds will be easiest to read.

What should a presenter avoid? Don't use all capital letters. They are hard to read. Never use dark letters on a dark background. The presentation will be hard to see. Don't use sound effects that are unrelated to the meaning of your presentation and avoid distracting transitions.

When presenting from a PowerPoint or Keynote presentation, look at your computer screen or handheld notes, not the screen the audience is looking at—to do that you would have to turn away from your audience and you would lose contact with the people you are presenting to.

Your summary statement:	

Guidance for the Writing Exercise (on page 96) After you have completed writing about the advantages, disadvantages, and historical impact of your invention or discovery, circle the main ideas in each paragraph. Use the main ideas to write a summary statement for your final paragraph.

(	Cons
ill be less -	-it limits a person's
case of	freedom
_	people should drive
e saved	carefully to prevent
osts will	most accidents
The same of the sa	if people think they are
	protected and safe from
't have	injury when they use a
	helmet, they might not
	drive carefully
	the government
The same and the s	shouldn't interfere in
	the decisions of adults
	messes up your hair

A The essay is organized into two paragraphs. Read the essay and write the main idea of each paragraph.

#### Should motorcycle drivers be required to wear helmets?

#### Main idea:

Many cities and countries have laws requiring motorcycle drivers to wear a helmet. In some ways, these laws are good and effective. For example, it is well known that motorcycle driving is very dangerous. If a motorcycle collides with another vehicle, the driver of the motorcycle has no protection and is often injured or killed. Most fatal injuries are caused by the driver's head hitting the pavement. On the one hand, such injuries are often not survivable. But on the other hand, if a driver is wearing a helmet, the chance of fatal head injury is reduced. Unfortunately, even though drivers know that helmet use could save their lives, many think an accident won't happen to them. However, if there is a law requiring drivers to wear helmets, a lack of judgment won't matter. Drivers will have no choice but to wear the helmet.

#### Main idea:

Nevertheless, there are arguments against compulsory helmet-use laws. Some people feel that wearing a helmet causes drivers to have a false sense of security. In other words, drivers may feel that when they are wearing a helmet, they don't have to drive carefully. With a helmet, they feel they have a justification for reckless driving. In contrast, other people object to helmet laws because they feel that the government shouldn't interfere with the decisions of adults. They argue that if they get hurt, it's their own responsibility, and if they die, it doesn't hurt anyone but themselves. People who have this opinion often complain about government intrusion in personal freedom.

**B** Guidance for the Writing Exercise (on page 108) Write the issue you chose and make a list of pros and cons. Use your notes to organize and write your essay.

To describe a place, organize details according to spatial relations. Choose a starting point (for example, the capital city or the largest city). Describe its location.

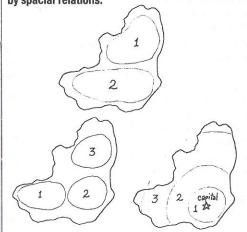
Lima is the capital of Peru. It is located on the west coast, on the Pacific Ocean.

The largest city in China is Shanghai. It is located in the southeast, along the East China Sea.

Describe where things are located in relation to that point. Choose a logical order to follow, such as north to south or west to east, so it is easy for the reader to understand.

- To the [north] of To the north of São Paulo is the city of Campinas.
- In the [south] of
   In the south of the island is the city of Kaosiung.
- [East] of East of Tokyo is the city of Chiba.
- Next to Next to Washington, D.C., is the city of Baltimore.
- In the middle / center of
   In the center of the country is the city of Madrid.
- Along the [coast / river]
   Along the coast, and west of the capital, are the cities of Valparaíso and Viña del Mar.
- At the start of At the start of the Pan-American Highway is the city of Fairbanks, Alaska.
- At the end of At the end of the Volga River is the Caspian Sea.

Here are three possible ways to organize details by spacial relations.



A On a separate sheet of paper, write a description for each of these places, using the language above. (Use the map on the page shown.)

1 Cobán (page 112)

4 Mexico (page 112)

2 Denali National Park (page 121)

5 Alice Springs (page 113)

3 Sydney (page 113)

- 6 Juneau (page 121)
- B Guidance for the Writing Exercise (on page 120) Draw a simple map of the place you chose. Write numbers on your map for at least two important places, beginning with 1 for the location you will start from, 2 for the next location, and so on. Then use your map to help you write your descriptions, using the language of spatial relations.



# **Top Notch Pop Lyrics**

#### ▶ 2:17-2:18 I'll Get Back to You [Unit 3]

Your camera isn't working right. It needs a few repairs.
You make me ship it overnight.
Nothing else compares.
You had to lengthen your new skirt, and now you want to get someone to wash your fancy shirts and dry them when they're wet.
Come a little closer—
let me whisper in your ear.
Is my message getting across to you loud and clear?

#### (CHORUS)

You're always making plans. I'll tell you what I'll do: let me think it over and I'll get back to you.

You want to get your suit dry-cleaned. You want to get someone to shorten your new pair of jeans and call you when they're done. I guess I'll have them print a sign and hang it on your shelf, with four small words in one big line: "Just do it vourself." Let me tell you what this song is really all about. I'm getting tired of waiting while you figure it out. I've heard all your demands, but I have a life, too. Let me think it over and I'll get back to you. I'm really reliable, incredibly fast, extremely helpful from first to last. Let me see what I can do. Day after day, everybody knows I always do what I say. (CHORUS)

#### ▶ 2:31-2:32 A True Life Story [Unit 4]

The story of our lives is a real page-turner, and we both know what it's all about. It's a fast read, but I'm a slow learner, and I want to see how it all turns out. (CHORUS)

It's a true life story.

It's a true life story.
I can't put it down.
If you want to know

If you want to know who's in it, just look around.

The story of our lives

is a real cliffhanger. It's hard to follow, but boy, does it pack a thrill a rollercoaster ride of love and anger, and if you don't write it, baby, then I will.

#### (CHORUS)

You can't judge a book by its cover. I wonder what you're going to discover. When you read between the lines, you never know what you might find. It's not a poem or a romance novel. It's not a memoir or a self-help book. If that's what you like, baby, please don't bother.

If you want the truth, take another look. (CHORUS)

#### ▶ 3:17–3:18 Lucky to Be Alive [Unit 5]

#### (CHORUS)

Thank you for helping me to survive. I'm really lucky to be alive.

When I was caught in a freezing snowstorm, you taught me how to stay warm.

When I was running from a landslide with no place to hide, you protected me from injury.

Even the world's biggest tsunami has got nothing on me, because you can go faster.

You keep me safe from disaster.

You're like some kind of hero—

you're the best friend that I know.

(CHORUS) When the big flood came with the pouring rain, they were saying that a natural disaster loomed. You just opened your umbrella. You were the only fellow who kept calm and prepared. You found us shelter. I never felt like anybody cared the way that you did when you said, "I will always be thereyou can bet your life on it." And when the cyclone turned the day into night, you held a flashlight and showed me the safe You called for help on your cell phone. You said you'd never leave me.

You said, "Believe me, in times of trouble you will never be alone." They said it wasn't such a bad situation. It was beyond imagination. I'm just glad to be alive—and that is no exaggeration.

#### (CHORUS)

#### ► 3:31–3:32 | Should Have Married Her [Unit 6]

She was born with talents in both literature and art. It must have been her love of books that first captured my heart. We both had experience with unhappiness before. I thought we would be together for rich or for poor.

#### (CHORUS)

I should have married her.
She was the love of my life,
but now she's someone else's wife.
I thought we would be happy.
I thought our love was so strong.
I must have got it all wrong.

It's hard to make a living when you're living in the past.
I wish we could have worked it out, but some things just don't last.
I wonder what she's doing or if she thinks of me.
One day she just changed her mind.
The rest is history.

#### (CHORUS)

It's too late for regrets.
She's gone forever now.
We make our plans,
but people change,
and life goes on somehow.
(CHORUS)

# ▶ 4:34–4:35 Reinvent the Wheel [Unit 8]

You've got your digi-camera with the Powershot,

Four mega pixels and a memory slot. You've got your e-mail and your Internet. You send me pictures of your digi-pet. I got the digi-dog and the digi-cat, the "digi" this and the "digi" that. I hate to be the one to break the news, but you're giving me the "digi" blues,

(CHORUS)

And you don't know the way I really feel. Why'd you have to go and reinvent the wheel?

You've got your cordless phone and your microwave, and your Reflex Plus for the perfect shave. It's super special, top of the line, with the latest new, cutting-edge design. You've got your SLR and your LCD, your PS2 and your USB. I've seen the future and it's pretty grim: They've used up all the acronyms. (CHORUS)

I keep waiting for a breakthrough innovation: Something to help our poor communication. Hey, where'd you get all of that high-tech taste? Your faith in progress is such a waste. Your life may be state of the art, but you don't understand the human heart. (CHORUS)

# ▶ 5:20–5:21 We Can Agree to Disagree [Unit 9]

I believe that dogs should be allowed to wander free.
That may be true, but don't you think that people have rights, too?
I believe that time has come for true dog liberty.
I see what you mean, but I don't share your point of view.

(CHORUS)

We can agree to disagree about what's wrong and right. It wouldn't be cool for you and me to fight when we don't see eye to eye.

I think my cat deserves to eat a treat, no matter what. Well, on the one hand, yes, but on the other hand, well, no. Don't you feel that every meal should be shared with a pet? That's one way to look at it, but I don't think so.

#### (CHORUS)

You can be a radical.
You can be conservative.
My dog doesn't care, and he won't ask you to leave.

You can be a moderate.

You can be a liberal.

You can believe what you want to believe.

I urge you to think it over before you decide. That your dog is very nice, I couldn't agree more. I believe that you and I should be the best of friends. That's exactly what I think. Why weren't we friends before? (CHORUS)

# ▶5:45–5:46 It's a Beautiful World [Unit 10]

The path is located half an hour west of here. I heard it's a must-see, and that it goes pretty near to a breathtaking beach a little farther up the coast. That's the one that everybody seems to like the most.

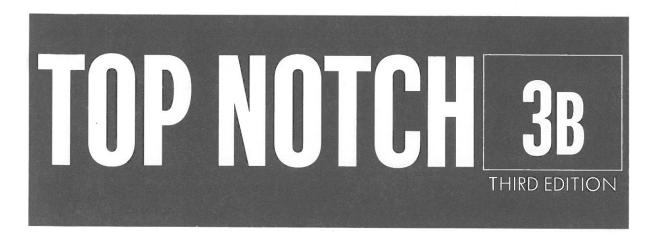
(CHORUS)

It's a beautiful world.
Be careful as you go.
The road is dark and dangerous.
Be sure to take it slow.
Yes, it's a beautiful world,
from the mountains to the seas.
Through life's lonesome valleys,
won't you come with me?

Are you planning on going to see the waterfall? I've been thinking about it, and I want to do it all! Would you happen to know anything about Rocky Cave? How do you get there? Can you show me the way?

#### (CHORUS)

I can't wait.
I don't want to miss it.
There isn't a place worth seeing that I don't want to visit.
(CHORUS)



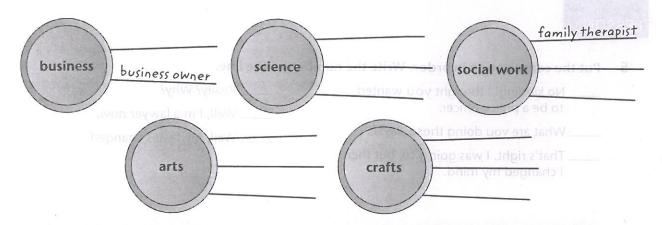
# WORKBOOK

# JOAN SASLOW ALLEN ASCHER

with Wendy Pratt Long and Penny Laporte

1 Complete the word webs. Write the professions on the lines.

builder	-business owner	furniture maker	dentist	designer
doctor	family therapist	manager	marriage counselor	painter
scientist	song writer	tailor	teacher	



#### 2 WHAT ABOUT YOU?

a.	On a scale of 1-5, how important are the following qualities for you in a job? A 5 indicates that
	the quality is very important to you. A 1 indicates that the quality is not important to you at all

	make the announcement	
107	watch the children this evening	5. Who
b. Look at one of the qualities yo	u gave a 5. Why is this quality important	to you?
	have a job that people think is imp	
have a flexible schedule	have a lot of time to spend with m	y family
work in a big company	be able to work anywhere (from h	9, ,
travel	work with people	
make a lot of money	work outside	
A STATE OF THE STA		

# 3 WHAT ABOUT YOU? Answer the questions with your own information.

- 1. Which field do you work in / plan to work in?
- 2. Why did you choose this field?

	a. I made up my r		b. It's on my min	nd.		
2.	I'll think about you a. I'll keep them i		<b>b.</b> I'll change my	mind.		
3.	What can I do for y		<b>b.</b> What's on yo	ur mind?		
4.	I've been thinking a. It's been on my		a lot lately.  b. I've changed			
5.	He was thinking al		ut he's going to wo <b>b.</b> He's changed		traveling.	doctor
SSON	11 mat					
5 Pu	it the conversation	in order. Write	the number on th	e line.		ernead )
		ought you wante	d	Really? Why?		
	to be a police o		. 3962	Well, I'm a la	wyer now.	
-	What are you do	77(94)(442)	<u> </u>	Well, my tast	es changed.	
	lhat's right LW	as going to, but t	hen			
	I changed my n	nind.		anay making a	ther plane	
i) cols	I changed my n	nind.  t happens to you n Lennon, British com	1 / While you're  nposer and musician; fro			99
Heats to now	I changed my n	t happens to you  n Lennon, British com which he v	a / While you're  nposer and musician; free  wrote for his son Sean	om the song "Beauti  yanon		
	Life is what —Joh	t happens to you  n Lennon, British com which he w	n / While you're nposer and musician; fro wrote for his son Sean	om the song "Beauti	",yo8 luf ake a lot of r avel ork in a big o	
9 .gmm 1	Life is what —Joh	nind.  t happens to you n Lennon, British com which he w	n / While you're  nposer and musician; fro  wrote for his son Sean  ping to or were go  it Robert, but then	om the song "Beauti varion ving to. we changed ou	",yod luf ake a lot of r avel ork in a big o ve a.sbnim r	
1	Life is what —Joh	nind.  t happens to you  n Lennon, British com which he v  ence with was go  (not) visi	n / While you're poser and musician; fro wrote for his son Sean poing to or were go it Robert, but then and out the truth, so	om the song "Beauti ving to. we changed ou oner or later.	we a lot of race in a long of the street of	
1 2 3	Life is what —Joh  complete each sente.  We —  Everyone —	nind.  t happens to you  n Lennon, British com which he v  ence with was go  in (not) visi  in (not) se	nposer and musician; from the form his son Sean and musician; from the form his son Sean and the form his son his so	we changed ou oner or later.	ake a lot of reactive remarks.	
1 2 3	Life is what  —Joh  complete each sente  . Everyone  They	nind.  t happens to you  n Lennon, British com which he w  ence with was go  (not) visi  fin  (not) so  she	or were go it Robert, but then ad out the truth, so ee that movie, but	om the song "Beauti various ving to. we changed ou oner or later. it was the only of e to an apartme	ake a lot of reactive remarks.	
1 2 3 4	Life is what —Joh  complete each sente.  Everyone ————  They ————————————————————————————————————	nind.  t happens to you  n Lennon, British com which he w  ence with was go  in (not) visi  in (not) se  she watch	n / While you're nposer and musician; fro wrote for his son Sean bing to or were go it Robert, but then ad out the truth, so ee that movie, but mov the children this e	om the song "Beauti various bing to. we changed ou oner or later. it was the only of e to an apartme vening?	ful Boy,"  a lot of a sex a love by pick and show a reminds.  a with a sex a s	
1 2 3 4 5	Life is what —Joh  complete each sente.  Everyone ———  They ———  Who ————  Who ————  Who —————  Who ————————————————————————————————————	nind.  t happens to you  n Lennon, British com which he w  ence with was go  in (not) visi  in (not) so  she watch  watch  mal	on / While you're inposer and musician; frow rote for his son Sean it Robert, but then ad out the truth, so ee that movie, but the children this evike the announcement.	we changed ou oner or later. it was the only one to an apartme vening?	ful Boy,"  poid a mi bloor minds.  one at 9:00.  Int in the city  eeting.	tra we ha ha ha ha ha ha ha ha ha ha ha ha a la a la a la a la a la a la a la a la a la a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a a
1 2 3 4 5	Life is what —Joh  complete each sente  Everyone ——  They ——  Who ——  Mr. Nan ——  Mr. Nan ——	nind.  t happens to you  n Lennon, British com which he v  ence with was go  in (not) visi  in (not) so  in she  in watch  in (not) Charlie	or were go it Robert, but then ad out the truth, so ee that movie, but the movie the children this er ke the announceme and Kim	om the song "Beauting to.  we changed ou oner or later.  it was the only one to an apartme vening?  ent at today's managed.	ful Boy,"  poids of Selection o	ow ord ?s slood as
1 2 3 4 5 6	Life is what  —Joh  complete each sente  E. Everyone  They  Mr. Nan  Mr. Nan  T.	nind.  t happens to you  n Lennon, British com which he w  ence with was go  (not) visi  fin  (not) so  she  watch  mal  (not) Charlie	or were go it Robert, but then ad out the truth, so ee that movie, but the children this er ke the announcement and Kim	we changed ou oner or later. it was the only one to an apartme vening? ent at today's members getting a raise, we	ful Boy,"  poid a mi bloor minds.  one at 9:00.  Int in the city  eeting.  t married laster	transport of the street of the

Read each sentence. Then circle the letter of the sentence that has a similar meaning.

7	Use	e the cues to make statements v	vith <u>wo</u>	ould.		
	1.	In 2010 Sam thought / be / a law In 2010 Sam thought he would		9		FT VOG 2011.
	2.	When I was young, I believed / s				
	3.	We were sure / Rick / become / a			Why do you say that?	
	4.	We didn't know / we / have so m	nany chi	ildren, but now we h	famous! !xiz evan Maybe. But you never le	
	5.	I never thought / I / get this job,	but I di		Nathan still play the gui	
	6.	When he was a child, Jim though			became a teacher instea	
8	Ciı	rcle the letter of the answer tha	t correc	ctly completes each	e Stacy's tho.	12 Complete
	1.	Did you think you feel this a. would		oout the news? ere going	c. weren't	going
		I thought we to eat dinner a. aren't going	b. wo	ouldn't	d. c. were go	ing
	3.	No one knew that the product _ a. would	<b>b.</b> wa	ch a success. as going to be	/ c. wasn't g	going to
	4.	Bob and Glenn going to wa. were well have linear to be	b. w	us, were they? ould avend abbow	c. weren't	
		They always thought theya. wouldn't	b. w	eren't going to	out they didn't.  c. would	
		HAT ABOUT YOU? What life ch			nplete each sentence in	your own way.
	1.	I was going to		, but	<u> </u>	
				, but	A 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	Stacy
	3.	A few years ago, I thought I wou	ıld		because	
	4.	Five years ago, I thought I would	n check		at my age.	
10		atch the sentences that have sir	ilar m	eanings. Draw a lin	acy take Jason's advice?	
	anu.	organ oran			e. Same things anymore.	
		org - organiz			er not to do it.	
				c. I decided to d	o something else.	
		It's hard to make a living.			the requirements.	
		I didn't pass the exam.		e. I can't make a	(25.1)	



#### 11 Read the conversation. Answer the questions.

Nathan: I should have continued playing the guitar.

Joshua: Why do you say that?

Nathan: I love music. It makes me so happy. I might have been

famous!

Joshua: Maybe. But you never know. You might not have liked the lifestyle of a musician.

1. Does Nathan still play the guitar? \_\_\_\_\_

2. Does he regret his decision? \_\_\_\_\_

6. When he was a child, Jun thought I be a fielighter but be became a free not be became a field.

4. Does Nathan have the lifestyle of a musician? \_\_\_\_\_

#### 12 Complete Stacy's thoughts. Circle the correct word. The standard war and a least of the standard words.



I can't believe what I did! Everyone (1.) may / must have laughed so hard when they heard about it—I'm sure of it. I (2.) should / must have taken Jason's good advice. If I had listened to him, I (3.) would / wouldn't have made such a fool of myself! And I (4.) shouldn't / must have left immediately, either. I (5.) might / must have made the situation better by staying there for a little while. I (6.) must not / should not have been thinking clearly. But I just had to leave. Everyone (7.) should / must have talked about it afterward. I'm so embarrassed!

I would rather regret the

things that I have done than

the things that I have not.

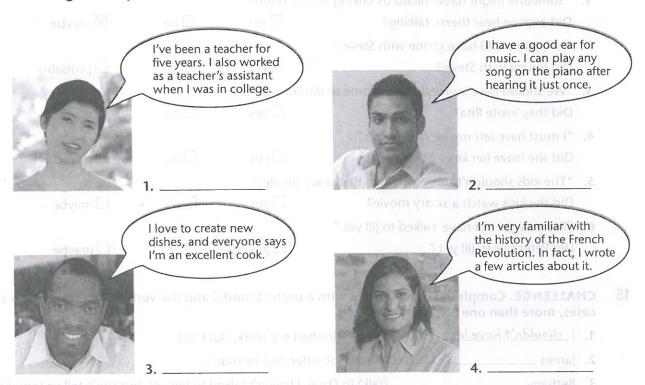
-Lucille Ball, American comedienne

## 13 Read the completed paragraph in Exercise 12. Then check the box that answers each question.

1.	Did Stacy take Jason's advice?	□yes	□no	$\square$ maybe
2.	Did Stacy make a mistake?	□yes	sentencon 🗆	probably
3.	Did Stacy leave immediately?	□yes	☐ maybe	probably
4.	Did Stacy's leaving make the situation worse?	□yes	no no no le	□ maybe
5.	Did everyone talk about it afterward?	□yes	□ no	probably
				and Aut 1

	"Someone mig	10 <del>-1</del> 10			knowledge. Write y
		ear them talking?	□yes	□no	☑ maybe
2.		d have gone with Steve."	tencher for		
	Did Jen go wit		□yes	□no	probably
3.		ave invited Rita to come to	dinner with us."		
	Did they invite		□yes	□ no	□ maybe
4.		eft my keys at home."			
		her keys at home?	□yes	☐ no	probably
5.		uldn't have watched that so			
		ratch a scary movie?	□yes	□no	☐ maybe
6.	a post in water in	not have talked to Jill yet."	te new		
	Did Peter talk	to Jill yet?	□yes	□ no	□ maybe
-	JUCOS ADOLES AGOUL				
cas	ses, more than	mplete the sentences wit one answer is possible.			o in parentheses. In so
1.	1 shouldn'the	<u>ave left</u> (leave) before I fir	nished my work, bu	ut I did.	
2.	James	(take) the jol	b offer, but he didi	n't.	
3.	Bethany	(talk) to D	ave. I haven't talke	ed to her yet, b	ut she'll tell us tonight
4.	Kelly	(get) stuck in	traffic. I can't thin	k of another re	eason for her to be late.
	You				
6.	Harry	(get) home a	already, but I doub	tit. mosleld soil	
	We	(get) home a	differently, could w	I was impres <b>?sv</b> ience.	
	We		differently, could w	ve? angmizew sonsi at more time at esidential candida	Christians: Well, I experience with the office.' 99
	We	(do) anything o	differently, could was a second of the secon	ve? enquis swill send ent more time at esidential candidate.	Ms. King: Well, is experimental with the office.' 99
	WeNobody	(do) anything of on his deathbed ever said.  —Paul Tsongas, United States	differently, could was a senator and former programmer and former programmer and senator a	ve? enquisework in the attention to the solution to the solution of the solution to the solution and the solution to the solut	Christians: Well. King: Well. Ms. King: But w
7.	We Nobody	(do) anything of on his deathbed ever said.  —Paul Tsongas, United States	differently, could we will wish I had spen a senator and former produced to the country of the c	vas impre ?evence.  at more time at about other about other is very a limit to the invery a limit to the about to the second at the about to the second at t	Christ Ms. King: Well, I exper  (c) Saint
7.	We Nobody	(do) anything of on his deathbed ever said.  —Paul Tsongas, United States	differently, could was a senator and former produced and former produced and former produced and senator and former produced and senator and former produced and senator and s	was impre 'Swience, ience, that amore time at the standard about other and he is very and he is very and he is very and he is very and a definitely in the can definitely	Christ Ms. King: Well.  exper  (c) Soifto aht and an and an
7. ON	We Nobody	(do) anything of on his deathbed ever said.  —Paul Tsongas, United States	differently, could was a senator and former property of the country of the countr	vas impre ?evence.  at more time at about other about other is very a limit to the invery a limit to the about to the second at the about to the second at t	Christ Ms. King: Well.  exper  yel.  (exper  yel.  Ms. King: But w  Ms. King: But w  Simon  Simon
7. ON	We Nobody	(do) anything of on his deathbed ever said.  —Paul Tsongas, United States	differently, could was a senator and former property of the country of the countr	was impre 'Swience, ience, that amore time at the standard about other and he is very and he is very and he is very and he is very and a definitely in the can definitely	Christ Ms. King: Well.  exper  (c) Soifto aht and an and an
7. ON Con	We Nobody	(do) anything of on his deathbed ever said.  —Paul Tsongas, United States	differently, could was a senator and former properties and former properties and former properties and the senator and the senat	was impre 'Swience, ience, that amore time at the standard about other and he is very and he is very and he is very and he is very and a definitely in the can definitely	Christians: Well. Lines. Well. Lines. Well. Lines. Well. Lines. Well. Lines. Well. Lines. Wings. But w. Warton: Yes, a Simon Ms. Rings. But the Simon Ms. Rings. Ckay.
7. ON Cor	Me Nobody	(do) anything of on his deathbed ever said.  —Paul Tsongas, United States entence with a word in the knowledge a skill.	differently, could was a senator and former property of the box.	was impre 'Swience, ience, that about othe hat about other hat about ot	Christians: Well. Response of the Company of the Co
7. ON Cor	Me Nobody	entence with a word in the knowledge a skill is an ability that you are	differently, could we will a spen of the senator and former properties and former properties and selection at all a spen of the senator and former properties and selection at all a spen of the senator at a spen of the senator at all a spen of the senator at a spen of the senat	was impre 'Swience, ience, ience, that amount and he is very and he is very and a can definitely let's look at Silence, iet's look at Sil	Christ Ms. King: Well.  P C '.apifto aht i.  Ms. King: But w Ms. King: But th Ms. King: But th Ms. King: But th Ms. King: Ckay Simon Ms. Pitts: Okay
7. ON Con	Me Nobody  mplete each sexperience	(do) anything of on his deathbed ever said.  —Paul Tsongas, United States entence with a word in the knowledge a skill is an ability that you are is an ability that you lear	differently, could we will a spen a senator and former produced a senator and senato	was impre 'Swience, ience, the amit arom to that about othe that about othe and he is very a the ability to the the ability to	Christ Well. I caper Ms. King: But what Ms. King: But what Ms. King: But the Simon Simon 2. Common sense 2. Common sense 3. experience in sexperience in sex
7. Con e 1. 2.	Me Nobody	entence with a word in the knowledge a skill is an ability that you are	differently, could we have a senator and former properties and former properties and former properties and the senator and	was impre 'Swience.  In a more time at the shout other about at Single	Christ Well. I caper Ms. King: But what Ms. King: But what Ms. King: But the Simon Simon 2. Common sense 2. Common sense 3. experience in sexperience in sex

17 Read each person's statement. Decide if the person is talking about a talent, a skill, experience, or knowledge. Write your answers on the lines.



Read the conversation. Check the skill, ability, or experience that each person has in the chart below.

Ms. Pitts:

So, we're looking at three candidates for this job: Simon Clark, Clayton Boyer, and

Christina Nelson. Let's talk about their qualifications.

Ms. King:

Well, I was impressed with Christina's leadership skills. She has a lot of leadership

experience.

Mr. Warton: That's true, but she doesn't have knowledge of sales.

Ms. Pitts: But she seems to have common sense. She must be able to learn quickly.

Mr. Warton: Well, if we're looking for knowledge of sales, Simon Clark is the best choice. He's been a

sales representative for twelve years.

Ms. King:

But what about other skills? Clayton speaks Spanish, French, and Portuguese.

Mr. Warton: Yes, and he is very artistic, too.

Ms. King:

But the ability to think logically is more important than artistic ability for this job. And

Simon can definitely think logically.

Ms. Pitts:

Okay, let's look at Simon . . .

	Simon Clark	Clayton Boyer	Christina Nelson
1. good leadership skills	a talent	diowledge a skill	expertence 1
2. common sense	diang	od escuev tedt vtilide og	2
3. experience in sales		mand up to divellide as	
4. good language skills	iislanuu toonaa acc	Loosuo granilari otasala	
5. artistic ability	dio niches e to	ngihautzahau adi at asala	17
6. logical thinking ability	e set have a nou	evision terit appoids a difficial	

19	Read the circled job advertisement. Check the qualities that are important for the job.  artistic talent management skills good communication skills experience in a similar position organizational ability computer skills mathematical ability compassion common sense	President of ds someone yday tasks. n Excel, Good uired. ful555-6390.  Lant to nancial ng group. must have and 3 years e required. (0, ext. 3232.	ADMINISTRATIVE ASSISTANT TO DIRECTOR  This is an exciting opportunity for a talented individual. The successful candidate will work with high-level individuals in the company. Responsibilities include managing the director's calendar and commitments, managing special projects, serving as the director's representative to other offices and individuals, and supervising the administrative staff. This position requires 5+ years in a senior-level executive/administrative position. Experience and strong knowledge in a variety of computer software applications is also required. The successful candidate will be quick-thinking, flexible, and have common sense. He/She will have strong organizational skills and attention to detail. He/She should also have excellent oral and written communication, problem-solving, and project-management skills. Apply online at http://www.jobs.sanbellcorp.com, Job #0009838.	Full-time small conto assist Must be Word, Pe phone et Good me Fax resur Administ Marketin Small, bu seeks mo support bus Successfri excellent people sk administra
	☐ manual dexterity		To answer this question, follow these	udililili (i
20	1 What is one of your talents?		Create a life map—not an ordinary way nwo ruoy map, but a map of where you not know experiences can there is wour life and where these experiences can past few years. You decide what is important It is differ you love? Did you pass an exam? Did you learn the feture, you are the feture.	
LESS 21	ON 4  Read the article <i>The Five Most Effective</i>	ve Work Ha	Securit 190 of priop 1 ms wold with the Student's Book again.	
A READING REHENSION	<ol> <li>The five basic habits in the workpla</li> <li>a. are common sense</li> <li>b. help you succeed</li> </ol>	ace <u>Instru</u> , r Lysive origin of mogque or	5. When you stay positive, you a. face challenges better b. stay focused on your work c. succeed in office politics	<del></del> .
	<ul> <li>Volunteer for an assignment only va. want to learn about it</li> <li>have the skills for it</li> <li>have the knowledge for it</li> </ul>	vhen you _	<ul> <li>6. If you see a problem,</li> <li>a. don't mention it to managem</li> <li>b. think about solutions</li> <li>c. present the problem and</li> </ul>	ient
	<ul><li>a. everyone</li><li>b. only your manager</li><li>c. people at levels above you and</li></ul>		asod ruoy of snoitulos  1. A life plan can help you plan your career  2. 2. A life map is a list of your daily goals.  3. Don't use a life map if you don't have reg	
	<ul><li>a. to prioritize your work</li><li>b. of things you want to accomplish</li></ul>	sh (1991) ny lene you	3. Don't use a life map if you don't have reg  4. It's helpful to analyze your past experience  5. One of the first steps in life planning is to  6. It's better to have a few big goals than me  7. Making a life plan helps you listen to oth.	

"A goal without a plan is just a wish."

"You should have

made a life plan."

~ Antoine de Saint-Exupéry

'I should have

been an architec

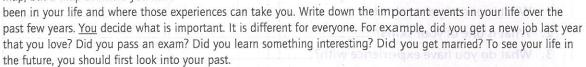
## **Creating Your Life Plan**

If you have goals in your life, but no plan to complete them, you will not be successful. That's why in order to have success in school, business, and your personal life, you need a life plan. A plan will help you turn your dreams into reality. To create your life plan, ask yourself two questions: Where am I going? How will I get there?

#### Where am I going?

To answer this question, follow these steps:

 Create a life map—not an ordinary map, but a map of where you have



- Next, look carefully at your list. Do you have regrets? Have your tastes changed over time? Planning for the future means making decisions that make you happy and match your interests and talents. Use your past experiences to set your goals for the future. Your life map can help you avoid making the same mistakes or having regrets.
- · Finally, set your goals to achieve over the next weeks, months, and years.

#### How am I going to get there?

Once you've decided on your life destination, you can start following your plan. Here are some tips to help you:

- Break your large goals into smaller ones. Almost any goal, no matter how difficult, will be easier to achieve if you break it down into several smaller goals.
- Focus on your goals and don't get distracted by unimportant things. Show and militable distracted by unimportant things.
- Don't give up. You won't be successful at everything right away, so you should always try again.
- Make friends. It's difficult to succeed if you're alone, so support from good friends is very important.

  Once you have created your life plan, go forward with it, but also go back to it. Tastes change. Circumstant

Once you have created your life plan, go forward with it, but also go back to it. Tastes change. Circumstances change. Don't be afraid to tailor your life to changes in your life.

3. Always be nice to solutions to your boss
1. A life plan can help you plan your career choices.
2. A life map is a list of your daily goals.
3. Don't use a life map if you don't have regrets.  3. Don't use a life map if you don't have regrets.
4. It's helpful to analyze your past experiences when you plan for the future.
5. One of the first steps in life planning is to determine what makes you happy.
6. It's better to have a few big goals than many small goals. The start trapped to
7. Making a life plan helps you listen to others.
8. Once you make a life plan, you should not change it.

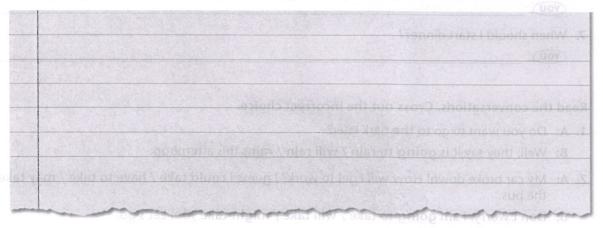
23	WHAT	<b>ABOUT YOU</b>	J? Answer the	questions in	your own way.
----	------	------------------	---------------	--------------	---------------

important?	nree important experiences you would put on your life map? Why do you think they are					
tense for expr	וסרות סד	Use the correct	intermation.	OUR OWN	Answer each question with y	A

2. What goals would you like to achieve this year, next year, and in the next five years? How are you going to complete them? Complete the list.

My goals for	How am I going to complete them?
this year	3. When are you going on vacation?
next year	What will probably be your biggest expense next year?
the next five years	UOY

Write a paragraph about a difficult work or life decision you have made. Include information about your past plans, how your plans changed, and your regrets.



- 25 Circle the letter of the best response to each sentence.
  - 1. "I should have gone to school instead of taking this job."
    - a. "You must have changed your mind."
    - b. "Well, you're still young."
  - 2. "Why did you change your plans?"
    - a. "My friends talked me out of it."
    - 5. A: The cable's out again! That's it! I am calling / call / am going to. wonk revenuo?" .d
  - 3. "I should have moved to another city when I had the chance." A like it lad baseds of the same and the chance."
    - a. "Maybe it's not too late."
    - b. "You must have moved."
  - 4. "I should have been an artist."
    - a. "Well, it's hard to make a living that way."
    - b. "It could happen to anyone."
  - 5. "I shouldn't have spent money on that sweater I bought last week. I regret my decision."
    - a. "Maybe you would have hated it."
    - b. "Maybe it's not too late to take it back."

			er each question with your <u>own</u> information. Use the correct fo ture. Write complete sentences.		.5		
1			nat will the weather be like tomorrow?				
		YO	ou like to achieve this year, next year, and in the next five years? Jud nem? Complete the list.	What goals would yo     Going to complete th			
2	2.	What are you going to do this weekend?					
				Mygoalston			
3			nen are you going on vacation? 	this year			
4	1.	Wh	hat will probably be your biggest expense next year?				
		YO	OU)	the pext five years			
5	5.		hat time are you leaving your house tomorrow?				
6	5.	Wh	hat time can we meet on Friday?	Write a paragraph abo about your past plans,			
7	7.		hen should I start dinner?		12		
		YO	hen should I start dinner?		12		
Вя	Rea	Yo ad t	hen should I start dinner?		2		
Вя	Rea	Yo ad t A:	the conversations. Cross out the incorrect choice.		, 2		
B F	Rea	ad t A: B:	the conversations. Cross out the incorrect choice.  Do you want to go to the park later?				
B F	Rea 1.	ad t A: B:	the conversations. Cross out the incorrect choice.  Do you want to go to the park later?  Well, they say it is going to rain / will rain / rains this afternoon.  My car broke down! How will I get to work? I guess I could take /	/ have to take / may take			
B F	Rea 1.	A: B: A: A:	the conversations. Cross out the incorrect choice.  Do you want to go to the park later?  Well, they say it is going to rain / will rain / rains this afternoon.  My car broke down! How will I get to work? I guess I could take / the bus.  Don't worry. I am going to take / will take / might take you. Let Do you want to go to the movies tomorrow night?	/ have to take / may take t's go.			
B F	Rea 1. 2.	A: B: A: B: A:	the conversations. Cross out the incorrect choice.  Do you want to go to the park later?  Well, they say it is going to rain / will rain / rains this afternoon.  My car broke down! How will I get to work? I guess I could take / the bus.  Don't worry. I am going to take / will take / might take you. Let Do you want to go to the movies tomorrow night?  I can't. I am seeing / will see / am going to see a play. You coul going to come with me.	/ have to take / may take t's go.  Id come / should come /	are		
B F	Rea 1. 2.	A: B: A: B: A:	the conversations. Cross out the incorrect choice.  Do you want to go to the park later?  Well, they say it is going to rain / will rain / rains this afternoon.  My car broke down! How will I get to work? I guess I could take / the bus.  Don't worry. I am going to take / will take / might take you. Let Do you want to go to the movies tomorrow night?  I can't. I am seeing / will see / am going to see a play. You coul going to come with me.	/ have to take / may take t's go.  Id come / should come /	are		
B F	Rea 1. 2.	A: B: A: B: A: A:	the conversations. Cross out the incorrect choice.  Do you want to go to the park later?  Well, they say it is going to rain / will rain / rains this afternoon.  My car broke down! How will I get to work? I guess I could take / the bus.  Don't worry. I am going to take / will take / might take you. Let  Do you want to go to the movies tomorrow night?  I can't. I am seeing / will see / am going to see a play. You coul going to come with me.  Let's go to Bloomfield's this weekend. I need a new pair of shoes.  I don't know Bloomfield's is having / can have / will have their will be / might be too many people there!	/ have to take / may take t's go.  Id come / should come /			
B F 1	Rea 1. 2.	A: B: A: B: A: B:	the conversations. Cross out the incorrect choice.  Do you want to go to the park later?  Well, they say it is going to rain / will rain / rains this afternoon.  My car broke down! How will I get to work? I guess I could take / the bus.  Don't worry. I am going to take / will take / might take you. Let  Do you want to go to the movies tomorrow night?  I can't. I am seeing / will see / am going to see a play. You coul going to come with me.  Let's go to Bloomfield's this weekend. I need a new pair of shoes.  I don't know Bloomfield's is having / can have / will have their will be / might be too many people there!	have to take / may take t's go.  Id come / should come /  Should c			
B F 1	Rea 1. 2.	A: B: A: B: A: A: A: A: A:	the conversations. Cross out the incorrect choice.  Do you want to go to the park later?  Well, they say it is going to rain / will rain / rains this afternoon.  My car broke down! How will I get to work? I guess I could take / the bus.  Don't worry. I am going to take / will take / might take you. Let Do you want to go to the movies tomorrow night?  I can't. I am seeing / will see / am going to see a play. You coul going to come with me.  Let's go to Bloomfield's this weekend. I need a new pair of shoes. I don't know Bloomfield's is having / can have / will have thei will be / might be too many people there!	have to take / may take t's go.  Id come / should come / should come / ir big sale tomorrow. There call a repairman!			
B F 1 2 2 3	Rea 1. 2. 3.	A: B: A: B: A: B: A: B:	the conversations. Cross out the incorrect choice.  Do you want to go to the park later?  Well, they say it is going to rain / will rain / rains this afternoon.  My car broke down! How will I get to work? I guess I could take / the bus.  Don't worry. I am going to take / will take / might take you. Let  Do you want to go to the movies tomorrow night?  I can't. I am seeing / will see / am going to see a play. You coul going to come with me.  Let's go to Bloomfield's this weekend. I need a new pair of shoes.  I don't know Bloomfield's is having / can have / will have thei will be / might be too many people there!  The cable's out again! That's it! I am calling / call / am going to	Id come / should	are /		

		future plan	prediction
110	I'm going to see the doctor tomorrow. We automa's	-	•
	He'll be a good doctor.	em in the spaces b	heading and write th
	My sister is going to study Spanish in Mexico.		all the neadings.
	II		Headings:
	I'm going to buy a new car next year.		Amena's Education
	She's going to be very successful.  The airport will be crowded		Amilli's Mysterious
О.	The airport will be crowded. 10 9/012819014		Amin's Family Life Amelia's Childhood
р.			
	ad the first sentence in each item. Circle the letter	r of the sentence t	hat is closest in meaning
1.	I shouldn't have talked to him.  a. I talked to him, but it was a mistake.		
	h I didn't talk to him and it was a mistake		
2.	We ought to have moved to Chicago.		
	<ul><li>a. We are going to move, but we don't know when</li><li>b. It was a good idea to move, but we didn't do it.</li></ul>	laguil and separting	
3.	I wish I had told them what I thought.		
	<ul><li>a. I didn't tell them, and now I regret it.</li><li>b. I told them, and that was a big mistake.</li></ul>		
4.	They should have warned us about the traffic.		
5.			
	a. He took the job, but it was a bad idea.		
	b. He didn't take the job, and now he regrets it.	mpetitive, and ente	
	her aviators. To mention just a few:		
	write each sentence expressing regret about the		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
2 54	I didn't go to college, and I regret that decision. (win I wish I had gone to college.	311)	In May of 1932, she From August 24 to
2.	I ordered chicken, but now I'm sorry that I did. (sho	, 1935, she was blue	
3.	Steve borrowed only two books from the library, bu	ut a few more woul	
4	Christina and Mark went skiing for their vacation, b	ut it was a had sho	At the age of forty. She and her naviga
d Isl	From Pagus Now Cuines, they flew toward stoward	actic was a bad cito	Caribbeal Low and then
5.	Katie ate so many cookies that now she feels sick. (s	mound)	
	of untilligation aviations in history	w tostroomi taam	No one knows for s
6.	Daniel studied law in college, but he'd prefer to be	a doctor. (ought to	) - The same of the control
	A CONTRACT OF THE CONTRACT OF		

#### WRITING BOOSTER

A Read the following short biography of the famous aviator, Amelia Earhart. Choose the correct headings and write them in the spaces below to divide the biography into sections. You will not use all the headings.

Headings:

Amelia's Education

Amelia's Mysterious Disappearance

Amelia's Family Life

Amelia's Childhood Years

Amelia's Marriage 4. I'm going to buy a new car

5. She's going to be very abroad prival a she's

Amelia's Love of Flying October 1 House and Love and Love

#### **Amelia Earhart**

Amelia Mary Earhart was born on July 24, 1897, in Atchison, Kansas. At three years old she went to live with her grandparents who lived fifty miles away. Amelia was a tomboy, and loved snow sledding and climbing trees. She lived with her grandparents until she was ten. At ten she moved back with her parents and her younger sister, Muriel.

Amelia saw her first airplane at the 1908 Iowa State Fair. At this fair, there was a stunt-flying exhibition, and it fascinated Amelia. It was here, as she watched these planes twirling and swooshing, that Amelia fell in love with the idea of flying. Amelia actually had to wait thirteen years to take her first ride in a plane, and just six months after that, she bought her first plane. It was bright yellow and she called it *Canary*.

Amelia was very competitive, and entered many flying contests over the next several years. She continually broke the records of other aviators. To mention just a few:

In June of 1928, she became the first woman to fly across the Atlantic.

In May of 1932, she became the second person to fly solo across the Atlantic.

From August 24 to 25, 1932, she flew a solo nonstop flight from the west coast of the United States to the east coast, making her the first woman to do that.

From April 24 to 25, 1935, she was the first person to fly solo from Hawaii to California.

At the age of forty, in 1937, Amelia Earhart wanted to be the first woman to fly around the world. She and her navigator took off from Oakland, California, and flew to Miami, then through the Caribbean to Brazil and through Africa to India. After India, they flew to Bangkok, Indonesia, Australia, and then Papua New Guinea. From Papua New Guinea, they flew toward Howard Island, 2,200 miles away. They never arrived, and despite extensive searches, they were never found.

No one knows for sure what happened to Amelia and her navigator, but the world knows that Amelia is one of the most important and influential aviators in history.

On a separate sheet of paper, write a short biography of someone you know or someone famous. Include information on this person's childhood, family, education, achievements, regrets, or any other information you would like to add. Divide the biography into sections. Include a heading for each section.

W66

UNIT 6

2

## Holidays and Traditions

1 Read the newspaper ad for an event. Check true or false. Stool was always what's what's who had a stool was a st

on. It everywear on the south Chursd	8. It started as a harvest celebrate
Join us at the Dexter Hotel	一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 一
December 31 to welcome the New Ye	ar!
Here's just some of what you'll enjoy:	greatl-Taiz
beginning at 7:00, a five-course dinner planned and prepared by world-famous chef Pierre Raynaud	ano lo
• live dinner music performed by pianist Oscar Herman	
<ul> <li>at 9:00, a two-hour concert starring the Sassies, one of the</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>at 11:00, popular hits and all your favorite songs played by from radio station WROC</li> </ul>	y DJ "Raging" Robin Collins
<ul> <li>hats and horns passed out at 11:30</li> <li>a countdown to midnight by DJ "Raging" Robin</li> <li>a perfect view of the fireworks over the Charlton River</li> </ul>	Tickets must be purchased in advance. Go online to buy tickets or get more information.
	Part of the supplied of the su

	true	false	Visitor: Wha
1. The ticket includes dinner.		0)6 📋 2	DOY
2. Oscar Herman is a radio DJ.			Visitor: How
3. The Sassies will perform until 11:00.	mai 🗖 u		UOY)
4. You need to bring your own hats and horns to this event.			odT metialV
5. You can view the fireworks on a large TV screen.			VISITOLE THAT

 Veblion	etos	NOTES TO VI	ST.A	-

	get together with	it's impossible	mobbed	takes place	reminds me
	A: Wow, the airport is	1	. Why are there	so many people he	ere?
	B: It's because it's almost				
	A: Really? What's the hol	iday for?			Read the newspa
	<b>B:</b> It started as a harvest November.				
	A: How do you celebrate	e it? 60 5 5 5			su mini
	B: People usually	thei	r families. That's	why	to get aroun
	Oh, and the food is gr			and patings	Here's just so
	A: It	_ of one of our trac			
-		a one of the hortest r			
SS	SON Roble (Initial)				
	or in which begins in the property				
4	WHAT ABOUT YOU? CO	omplete the conve			
	Visitor: Tell me about a l				
	You Well, one	holiday is	•	The second second	
	Visitor: What kind of hol	iday is it?			
	You It's a(n)_	m.	_ holiday that ta	kes place in	
	visitor: How do you cele	ebrate it?			
	You Well, in n	ny family we usually	y	Will perjorn until	
	Visitors That sounds are	this event.			
	Visitor: That sounds gre	al!			
5	Complete each sentence	e with <u>historical, r</u>	eligious, or seas	sonal.	
	1. A settive lebom as	_ holiday is a celeb	oration of a parti	cular time of year.	
	2. On	holidays, peop	le celebrate som	ething that happe	ned in the past.
	3. A harvest festival is an	n example of a		holiday.	
	4. A	holiday is related	d to people's bel	efs.	

6	Match each w	ord with the	correct definition.	Use the words from the	box.
---	--------------	--------------	---------------------	------------------------	------

a card	a costume	the dead	
fireworks	a gift	a parade	18
a picnic	pray	wish each other well	D.S.

		(AllEGI): DO AOG HINIGHT BRANCES CONTRACTOR
1	gouto somerane s ha	: something that you give someone, especially to thank him or her, or on a special occasion
2	(E)	<ul> <li>a public celebration when musical bands, brightly decorated vehicles, etc move down the street</li> </ul>
3		<ul> <li>clothes worn by someone to make him or her look like a different person, an animal, etc.</li> </ul>
4		: to speak to God in order to ask for help or give thanks
5		: colorful explosives that people burn when celebrating a special day
6	EVEN A COMPANY	-: people who have died to have shies for all the off nov of the order of the normal
7		_: a meal that is prepared at home and then taken outside to be eaten
8		a written greeting, often with a picture on the front, that you send to people on special occasions
9	and the second control of the second	: to say that you hope someone will have good luck, a happy life, etc.

## 7 Circle the word(s) that correctly completes the sentence. In some sentences, both choices are correct.

1. Anyone who / that tries this dessert loves it.

6. She's the woman.

- 2. The parties that / who take place on New Year's Eve are always so much fun.
- 3. The New Fire Ceremony was an Ancient Aztec celebration that it / that was celebrated every 52 years.
- 4. An emcee, or master of ceremonies, is a person who / he acts as the host at a formal occasion.
- 5. The flowers that / who arrived yesterday were absolutely gorgeous.not been of been all X
- 6. A host is someone that / who invites a person to his or her home.

#### 8 Write the adjective clause that correctly completes each sentence. Use the clauses in the box.

that is celebrated in Latin America	who enjoy being outside
who is invited to someone's home that come by e-mail	that are celebrated with the whole family who talked about David
This is a great holiday for people	nbok is a dress. Women in Korea wear it for Chus
2 Llovo holidavs	

1.	This is a great holiday for people
2.	3. Hanbokis a dress. Women in Korea wear it for Chuseok. (that)
3.	It's a holiday
4.	A. People enjoy Halloween. People like wearing costumes. (who)
5.	I'm surprised by the number of greeting cards



9 Complete the conversation. Circle the best response to each question or statement.

Mitch: Do you mind if I ask you something?

Vanessa: Yes, of course. / Of course not.

Mitch: I'm not sure about the appropriate behavior here. When you go to someone's house for

dinner, what should you bring?

Vanessa: You should bring a small gift. / You should bring the host.

Mitch: 191 Definitely. / Thanks. It's a good thing I asked now zerolo.

#### **Gift-giving Etiquette**

- In Japan, China, and Vietnam, it is not customary to open a gift in front of the person who gave it to you. The gift is set aside and opened later in private.
- In Russia, gifts for children are usually opened in private, while gifts for adults are usually opened in the presence of others.
- In Germany, you should avoid giving large or expensive gifts in private.
   The larger the gift, the more public the gift-giving should be. Spenganose



#### 10 Read each sentence. If the relative pronoun can be omitted, cross it out. If it can't be omitted, circle it.

- 1. The dress that I wore to the party is in my closet.
- 2. Anyone who travels on that holiday should plan for delays.
- 3. The woman that you were talking with is a professional party planner.
- 4. The couple whom we saw at the movies last night used to live in our building.
- 5. Ella is someone who always makes people feel good about themselves.
- 6. On Thanksgiving I think about the things that I am grateful for. 99 To 1912sm 10, 990m9 nA
- 7. It's great to meet someone who goes out of his way to help you. and what should be someone who goes out of his way to help you.

## 11 Combine the two sentences into one, using the relative pronoun in parentheses. Omit the relative pronoun where possible.

- 1. The holiday takes place in July. I told you about the holiday. (that)

  The holiday (that) I told you about takes place in July.
- 2. The person should bring flowers. The person comes for dinner. (who) is made and a most said.
- 3. Hanbok is a dress. Women in Korea wear it for Chuseok. (that)
- 4. People enjoy Halloween. People like wearing costumes. (who)
- 5. The celebrations are a lot of fun. The celebrations take place during Mardi Gras. (that)

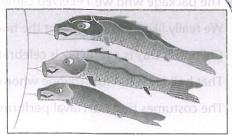
7.	The friend went to Thailand for his vacation. I told you about the friend. (whom)	
8.	My friends spent New Year's Eve with me. They came from Germany. (who)	
	some places even before the Children's Ven Jas even electrics in many some of	
Co	orrect the error in the adjective clause in each sentence.	
1.	The package who we received came from Hong Kong.	
2.	We really liked the restaurant the book recommended it.	
3.	Children's Day is a holiday is celebrated in many countries.	
4.	That holiday is fun for anyone whom loves to celebrate.	
5.	The costumes that Carnaval performers wear them are gorgeous.	
ON	3 Cabin Carrier	
ON	Celebrated on May 5. Children's Day is a national in a favorbudal or into the text, in in minute at time.	
	Celebrated on May 5, Children's Day is a national description of the facet in the minimum and the facet in the fa	ver t
Re	ead the article <i>Holidays Around the World</i> on page 80 in the Student's Book again. Answ sestions.	ver t
Re	ead the article <i>Holidays Around the World</i> on page 80 in the Student's Book again. Answ	ver t
Re qu 1.	ead the article <i>Holidays Around the World</i> on page 80 in the Student's Book again. Answ sestions.	ver t
Re qu 1.	ead the article <i>Holidays Around the World</i> on page 80 in the Student's Book again. Answers in the Student's Book again. Answers in the Student's Book again. Answers is Ramadan celebrated?	ver t
Re qu 1. 2.	ead the article Holidays Around the World on page 80 in the Student's Book again. Answers in the Student's Book again. Ans	ver t
Re qu 1. 2. 3.	ead the article Holidays Around the World on page 80 in the Student's Book again. Answerstions.  When is Ramadan celebrated?  Why do Muslims celebrate Ramadan?  When is the Chinese New Year celebration?	ver t

#### CHILDREN'S DAY

In 1954, The United Nations General Assembly suggested that all countries set aside a special day for children. The idea behind Children's Day was to encourage all nations to focus on the needs, rights, and well-being of children everywhere. Since then, and in some places even before then, Children's Day has been celebrated in many countries, on different days, and in different ways.

#### Japan

Children's Day in Japan used to be celebrated separately for girls (on March 3) and for boys (on May 5), but today it's a holiday for all children on May 5. On Children's Day, families with boys often hang carp decorations, since a carp is a fish that symbolizes strength and success. They also display figures that look like warriors, or fighters. People eat rice cakes filled with bean paste and covered with leaves. There are many sporting and art events for children all over Japan on that day.



#### Korea

Celebrated on May 5, Children's Day is a national holiday in Korea. Many parents don't work and spend the day with their children. Families often visit parks, zoos, and movie theaters because they're free for children on this day. Parents traditionally give their children gifts and money.

#### India

Jawaharlal Nehru, the first prime minister of India, deeply loved children. His birthday, November 14, became Children's Day in India. Schools celebrate by having cultural programs and handing out treats and snacks. There are competitions and games of all kinds.

#### Turkey

Mustafa Kemal Atatürk, founder of the Turkish Republic, established April 23 as Children's Day in this country. People enjoy festivals and performances by children. Children replace the president, prime minister, members of the Grand National Assembly, and other officials for one day. They address children's and educational issues.



#### Samoa

Lotu-Tamiati, or Children's Day, is celebrated in Samoa on White Sunday, the second Sunday in October. It is both a religious and national holiday in Samoa. Children dress all in white and parade in line from tallest to shortest into church. They perform songs and religious plays for their parents and relatives. Then they return home for a distribution meal. They are honored by their parents by being served first and receiving gifts.

- 1. In which two countries do children receive gifts on Children's Day?
- 2. In which country was Children's Day traditionally celebrated separately for boys and girls?
- 3. In which country do children participate in government on Children's Day?

world, brides and grooms give one another wedding rings. These rings' some another wedding rings. These rings' some another when they got married. They are also a sign to others that they are married. They are fourth tinger, but the hand it's worn on depends on it's worn on depends on the reading on there is evid roop, and grooms give one word on the power of the roop of the	
world, brides and grooms give one come to symbouze endless love and grooms give one shother wedding rings. These rings we have almost one another when they got married. They are always been worn on the fourth tinger, but the hand	
world, brides and grooms give one another wedding rings. These rings!  Wedding rings have almost one another when they got matried. They are always been worn on the	
world, brides and grooms give one come to symbolize endless another wedding rings. These rings' love and commitment.	
AND	
the article. Then circle the letter of the word or phrase that best completes each entence	18   368.01

is pretty excited,	too, but he's also	really nervous.
Tomorrow morning the	are going	to Tahiti for a seven-day After all
the stress and excitement of the v		· ·
made from hone that by doing this read the article. Then circle the	y for the first mont. s, they would have letter of the wo Ring parts of the	In many ancient cultures, the circle is a symbol of eternity. The wedding ring has
t weddings in many particles and great another wedding ring remind them of the committee one another when they got malso a sign to others that they. No one knows for sure how the started, but there is evidence long ago, in ancient Egypt. Con had a hole in the center. An Eused to place a coin on his broshow that he would take care	gs. These rings ent they made to arried. They are are married. his tradition that it began oins at that time gyptian groom ide's finger to e of her.	come to symbolize endless love and commitment.  Wedding rings have almost always been worn on the fourth finger, but the hand it's worn on depends on where you live. In some cultures, people wear their rings on the left hand, and in others, they wear them on the right.
1. Rings are traditionally given _	gs. These rings ent they made to arried. They are are married. his tradition that it began oins at that time gyptian groom ide's finger to e of her.	love and commitment.  Wedding rings have almost always been worn on the fourth finger, but the hand it's worn on depends on where you live. In some cultures, people wear their rings on the left hand, and in others, they wear them on the right.
Rings are traditionally given _     a. only in Egypt	gs. These rings ent they made to arried. They are are married. his tradition that it began oins at that time gyptian groom ide's finger to e of her.  b. during we	love and commitment.  Wedding rings have almost always been worn on the fourth finger, but the hand it's worn on depends on where you live. In some cultures, people wear their rings on the left hand, and in others, they wear them on the right.  c. just to brides
<ol> <li>Rings are traditionally given _ a. only in Egypt</li> <li>Ancient Egyptian grooms gav a. money to buy a ring</li> </ol>	gs. These rings ent they made to arried. They are are married. his tradition that it began oins at that time gyptian groom ide's finger to of her.  b. during we e their brides b. money sh	love and commitment.  Wedding rings have almost always been worn on the fourth finger, but the hand it's worn on depends on where you live. In some cultures, people wear their rings on the left hand, and in others, they wear them on the right.  c. just to brides  aped like a ring  c. a ring for every finger
<ol> <li>Rings are traditionally given _ a. only in Egypt</li> <li>Ancient Egyptian grooms gav</li> </ol>	gs. These rings ent they made to arried. They are are married. his tradition that it began oins at that time gyptian groom ide's finger to of her.  b. during we e their brides b. money sh	love and commitment.  Wedding rings have almost always been worn on the fourth finger, but the hand it's worn on depends on where you live. In some cultures, people wear their rings on the left hand, and in others, they wear them on the right.  c. just to brides  aped like a ring  c. a ring for every finger

18

#### GRAMMAR BOOSTER

A	Rea	ad each sentence. If the sentence i	s correct, write <u>C</u> . If t	he sentence is inco	rrect, write <u>I</u> and cor	rect it.
		Babootie is a traditional food from				
	2.	Japan is a country that has a lot of	of festivals.		2. You can't play ch	
	3.	The most expensive trip I took w	as the one that it wer	nt to Antarctica	3. Young children o	
	4.	My best friend is a woman that li	ves in Brazil			
	5.	The Grand Hotel is a seaside hotel	el that everyone likes.	en works very late, o the work		
В	Re	write each item as one sentence	with a reciprocal p	ronoun.	Circle who or whor	
	1.	Adam, Barb and Linus every  Adam, Barb and Linus see one	day. Barb sees Linus e another every day.	every day, too.	1. Mrs. Reilly	
	2.	Ms. Heidle waved at Ms. Cook an		ack at her.	3. My friend who /	
	3.	Gerry meets Trish for lunch every			4. The people who 5.	
	4.	James, Barb, and Jessie were lost.		ind the others.	6. My friend	
	5.	The employees in my office buy	gifts for the other peo	ople in the office.	NG BOOSIER	F837\V6
		orrect column in the chart. Thin	ined words in the co			
C	Ch	oose the phrase that correctly o	ompletes each sent	ence.	words and add the	
	1.	DOUT MIKTO	b. herself			
	2	a. you  Did he hurt?			3. The <u>fragrant odg</u>	
	2.		<b>b.</b> himself			
	3.	You should be really proud of a. her	id I was reminded <del>of</del>			
	4.	She's feeling really sorry fora. one another	_ right now. <b>b.</b> myself		6. The banging of the result o	
	5.	I think he should believe ina. myself			ch other	
	6.	They always see on weeker a. themselves	nds. <b>b.</b> they		ne another	

Complete each sentence with a phrase from the box.

by herself	by himself	by ourselves	by themselves	by yourself	each other
1. Nobody we	nt with Kate to the	e movies. She decid	led to go	Sabootie is a tr <del>aditi</del>	
2. You can't pl	ay chess	You need a	partner.		2.1
			, even if it's di	fficult for them.	
4. The players	wished	good luck b	efore the game.		
5. Mrs. Jackson	n often works very	/ late, so her husbar	nd eats dinner	My best friend is a v	
6. We decided	to do the work _	inste	ead of paying someor	ne to do it.	
1. Mrs. Rei	lly is my n	eighbor who / who	in your <u>own</u> way.  om moved in	three years	ago.
<ol><li>People will</li><li>My friend w</li></ol>	ho / whom lives	in should be very seem loo	is a really	Heidle waved at	rson.
			W6		
5	is a fam	nily friend <b>who / wh</b>	nom I have known for	a long time.	
		is someone who	whom I talk to alm sie were lost. All of th	ost every day.	

#### WRITING BOOSTER

- Read the sentences. Write the underlined words in the correct column in the chart. Think of other words and add them to the chart.
  - 1. The traditional sweet and salty candy felt so good on my tongue that I closed my eyes in happiness.
  - 2. My ears were filled with the sweet sound of children laughing.
  - 3. The <u>fragrant odor perfumed</u> the air.
  - 4. The women <u>looked like a rainbow</u> in their <u>many-colored</u> traditional robes.
  - 5. The food was very spicy and rich, and I was reminded of the flavors of Morocco.
  - 6. The banging of the drums in the parade made a sound as loud as thunder.

Sight	Sound	Taste	Smell
c. each other	IIs	300001	5. I think he shoul a. myself
c. one another		e on weekends. b they	6. They always set a. themselves

W76

A <u>simile</u> is a way	iday as a child. The	n complete	the similes b	elow witl	i your <u>own</u>	information	n.
	n Children's Day, I v						
	, I was		. On that day				
	as,		like a				
as excited	as		like a	65			
as	nic technology. Co 2s	t use electro	like	ik about i that you	Y <b>OU?</b> Thin e product <del>s</del>	AT ABOUT rt with some	
Look at the p smells, and t	photographs. Write astes.	a sentence	with interest	ing detai	ls about th	e sounds, si	ghts,
A Wash							E P
				1	FL	A -	-
6	N V	N. vo	ne chart ab	- 1	.图像		
100	1000000			13			
TYPE !		Marie			1		
	THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF T		150	COLUMN TO SERVICE STATE OF THE			
	( )	CARRIED MATERIAL	Lind tada		30		
Songkra	n collaborations. The		tan)				
ed to copy.)	n celebrations—Thai	land	tarib Biri q A() savo	Indepen	dence Day	barbeque—C	Canada
ed to copy.)		land	teri) bisti g A() savo			barbeque—C	4.
Sight:	n that no one clse is allow	land Hasis	beri g A / s salid Smel	l:			5.
Sight:		land stress	beri g A / s salid Smel	in en baie	duct you li	orq sits bro	4. 5.
Sight:	n that no one clse is allow	land stress	Smel	sted as ni sd before ngʻit?	duet you li	orq sits bro	4. 5. 
Sight:	n that no one clse is allow	land stress	Smel	sted as ni sd before ngʻit?	duet you li	k at the pro	4. 5. 
Sight:	n that no one clse is allow	land stress	Smel	sted as ni sd before ngʻit?	duet you li	k at the pro	4. 5. 
Sight:	n that no one clse is allow	land stress	Smel	sted as ni sd before ngʻit?	duet you li	k at the pro	4. 5. 
Sight:	n that no one clse is allow	land stress	Smel	sted as ni sd before ngʻit?	duet you li	k at the pro	4. 5. 
Sight:	n that no one clse is allow	land stress	Smel Taste	sted as ni sd before ngʻit?	duet you li	k at the pro	4. 5. 
Sight:	n that no one clse is allow	land stress	Smel	sted as ni sd before ngʻit?	duet you li	k at the pro	4. 5. 
Sight:	n that no one clse is allow	land stress	Smel Taste	sted as ni sd before ngʻit?	duet you li	k at the pro	4. 5. 
Sight:	n that no one clse is allow	land stinets of the state of th	Smel Taste	Thanks	u begin usi	When did yo	tates
Sight:Sound:	of that no one else is allow	land streets as a service of the ser	Smel College C	Thanks	u begin usi	When did yo	tates
Sight:Sound:	naval parade—Brazil	land streets as a service of the ser	Smel Smel Lithout It?	Thanks	u begin usi	When did you	tates

D Choose one photograph from exercise C. On a separate sheet of paper, write a paragraph describing the event. Use interesting details to describe what things look like, smell like, sound like, or taste like.

## Inventions and Discoveries

1 WHAT ABOUT YOU? Think about products that use electronic technology. Complete the chart with some products that you use.

At home	At school or wor	rk	Outside (for entertainment or transportation)
and wasterness of the same	C-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-10-	egergay	

2	In 1898, an executive at the U.S. Patent* Office said that the office should be closed because everything had already been invented.  (*A patent is a legal document that gives you the right to make or sell a new invention that no one else is allowed to copy.)
5	Smells

- 4. How could this product be better?
  - 4 Choose the best response. Circle the letter.
    - 1. "The drive home was brutal."

When did you begin using it? \_\_\_\_

3. How would your life be different without it? \_\_\_\_\_

- a. "I know. The traffic was awful."
- 2. "Did the bugs bother you?"
  - a. "No, I bit the bullet."
- 3. "There were tons of people at the mall."
  - a. "What a nightmare!"
- 4. "Let's go camping this weekend."
  - a. "Sure. My mom won't hear of it."
- b. "I know. The scenery was beautiful."
- b. "Yes, I got eaten alive!"
- b. "What fun!"
- b. "I can't. My mom won't hear of it."
- 5. "I need to get my car fixed, but it's going to cost so much!"
  - a. "Well, you'll have to bite the bullet and pay for it."
- b. "Well, you'll have to bite the bullet and not pay for it."

## LESSON

#### 5 Cross out the word or phrase that has a different meaning from the others.

1.	high-tech	using new technology	ery day, vo strate
2.	offering high quality	get / get / got a perlayon	top-of-the-line
3.	innovative l'abluow \ al	high-end \ \daidt t nob \ \dai	revolutionary
4.	state-of-the-art	cutting-edge	high-end 200 blue
5.	top-of-the-line	high-end low \ vad a'no	your price, peotast
6.	novel	revolutionary	high-tech
7.	innovative	first-rate	high-end

Sylvan Goldman, the owner of a grocery store, invented the shopping cart in 1937 when he realized he should make it easier for his customers to buy more things.



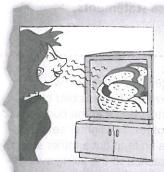
6 Look at the picture. Then check the box that answers each question. Wollol of boog 231 . 8

			(not / d	بلسلم	4. If I ware yo
If I had of money, today.	I'd buy it  Also avon silver of silv	illable in and red.	Keith		9 Use the so
1	Is the stereo less than \$500?	yes	no	maybe	
2.					
	TO STATE OF THE ST		П	D Shane	
5.	Does Keith have a new job?				
6.	Does Tanya like it?			П	
7.	Does Rick like it?				
	Is Rick going to buy it?				

			re if it were in good			
			/ weren't / wouldn'	9		
COVIDED OF BOLLM			time if they relax a li			
4. If you exercise ev					high-tec	
			et / got a pet.svon			
GREET .			't think / didn't thin			
			people would buy it		state-of-	
8. If you don't lowe	er your price, p	eople don't bu	y / wouldn't buy /	won't buy your		
			revolutionary			
Complete the conc parentheses.	litional senter	nces with the o	correct form of the	verbs. Use the	words in	
1. If you don't look	hard enough,	you	(not / find) it.			
2. There are always	people at the	park if the weat	ther	(be) nice.		
3. It's good to follo	w the direction	ns if you	(not / wan	t) to get lost.	ok at the	
4. If I were you, I_		(not / do) it.				
5. They wouldn't tr	ry it if they	(k	now) all the risks.	If it's le		
6. If Andrea buys a	new car, she _	Le Stindar	(not / have) enough	money for othe	r things.	
	All the second s	iant) to do it	211 1 11 1			
7. If you really  8. If we		CONTRACT TO THE SECOND	ou'll make it nappen ry, we would stop ar		To buy it	
8. If we		CONTRACT TO THE SECOND			1 0.00) 11	
8. If we ON 2 Use the sentences	(not / be	) in such a huri	ry, we would stop ar		1 0.00) 11	
8. If we ON 2 Use the sentences No harm done.	from the box ered to take manyone.	to complete the	he conversation.	nd take pictures		.11
Use the sentences  No harm done.  If I had remembe Sorry we're late.  It can happen to	from the box ered to take manyone.	to complete the	he conversation.	me.		
Use the sentences  No harm done.  If I had remembe Sorry we're late.  It can happen to	from the box ered to take m anyone. ay we got lost	to complete the	he conversation.	me.		
Use the sentences  No harm done.  If I had remembe Sorry we're late.  It can happen to I'm ashamed to s  A:	from the box ered to take m anyone. ay we got lost	to complete the	he conversation.  uld have been on ti	me.	is the ste Does Sally Wilk Sally	2.
Use the sentences  No harm done. If I had remember Sorry we're late. It can happen to I'm ashamed to sentences  A:  B: What happened	from the box ered to take m anyone. ay we got lost	to complete they GPS, we won	he conversation.  uld have been on ti	me.	is the ster Does Sall Will Derr	2.
Use the sentences  No harm done.  If I had remember Sorry we're late.  It can happen to I'm ashamed to sentences.  A:  B: What happened.	from the box ered to take manyone. ay we got lost	to complete they GPS, we won	he conversation.  uld have been on ti	me.  y have enough ick buy it?	is the ster Does Sall Will Sally Does Keil	2. 4. 5.
Use the sentences  No harm done. If I had remember Sorry we're late. It can happen to I'm ashamed to selected.  B: What happened.  A:  B: That's OK	from the box ered to take m anyone. ay we got lost	to complete they GPS, we won	he conversation.  uld have been on ti	me.  y have enough ick buy it?  th have a new je ya like it?	is the ster Does Sall Will Sally Does Keil	2. 4. 5. 5.
Use the sentences  No harm done. If I had remember Sorry we're late. It can happen to I'm ashamed to sentences  A:  B: What happened	from the box ered to take m anyone. ay we got lost	to complete they GPS, we won	he conversation.	me.  y have enough ick buy it?  th have a new je ya like it?	Is the ster Does Sally Will Sally Does Keil Does Tan	2. 4. 5. 5.

	We wouldn't have gott	en lost if you had asked for	directions."		If I had forgot	
1.	. Did they get lost?		viing Yes	Nonob		
2.	. Did she ask for direc	tions?	Yes	No	If I hadn't	
"1	f I'd known we were g	oing out to lunch, I would	n't have brought li	unch with i		
3.	. Are they going out t	o lunch?	Yes	No		
4.	. Did the woman know	w about the lunch plans?	Yes	No		
5.	. Did she bring lunch	with her?	Yes	No		
"1	f we hadn't bought tic	kets early, we wouldn't ha	ve been able to se	e Alien Inva	sion."al arts att	
6	. Did they buy tickets	early?	Yes	No		
7	. Were they able to se	e Alien Invasion?	Yes Yes	No		
11-	They wouldn't have be	een on time if they had take	en the 8 o'clock tra	in."		
	. Were they on time?	'f use the most modern ee or mathods in	Yes			
9	. Did they take the 8 d	o'clock train?	rataud Yes	No		
(	Circle the phrase that	correctly completes each	sentence.			
1	. If television hadn't l I was growing up.	been / wouldn't have bee	n invented, I woul	d have read	d more when	
2	. You would have ha careful about your s	d / had had more money a pending.	at the end of the m	onth if you	ı had been mo	re
3	. If people had known hadn't bought it.	n more about the product,	many of them wo	uldn't hay	e bought /	
4	. If we had really thou desert in the summe	ught about our travel plans er.	, we wouldn't go	/ wouldn'	t have gone to	the
5	. We would have bou people were going	ight more food if we <b>hadn'</b> to come over for the party.	t known / had kn	own that s	o many	
	destroyed their hom	/ would have trained the ne. double work	puppy better, she	ENHH	ave TO GER	
6		writing your	hov You will not		the phrases.	
	Complete the sentence	es. Use the phrases in the	box. Tou will no			
	had been	had eaten	had made	ExHIII -	dn't talked to	)
	had been		had made	ha	dn't talked to ouldn't have e	
	had been would have been	had eaten would have chosen	had made would have ha	ha ad we		
1	had been would have been	had eaten would have chosen  a mistake, I would ha	had made would have have have accepted respo	ha ad we	ouldn't have e	eaten
1 2	had been would have been  If I Tom wouldn't have	had eaten would have chosen	had made would have have ve accepted respo	ha ad we	ouldn't have e	eaten

5. Did she bring lunch with her?	2.	I would have done thing	s differe	ntly		id they get lost?	
Write the letter of the definition that matches each word. You will use some definitions more than  a. is silly in an exciting or amusing way  b. works well without wasting time, money, energy, etc., in the best way  c. uses new technology  c. uses new technology  f. offers high quality  1cutting-edge  6inefficient  11state-of-the-art  2efficient  7innovative  12top-of-the-line  3first-rate  8low-tech  13unique  4high-end  9novel  14wacky  15high-tech  10revolutionary  Look at the ads. Check the word that best describes each product. Explain your choice.  TIRED OF RUINING  YOUR BOOKS BY FOLDING THE PAGES?  Don't ruin another page! Never lose your place again!  1low-techlow-leftlow-le	3.	If I hadn't	Yes	, I wouldn	't have	id she ask for directio	2. D
Write the letter of the definition that matches each word. You will use some definitions more than  a. is silly in an exciting or amusing way  b. works well without wasting time, money, or energy  c. uses new technology  f. offers high quality  1cutting-edge  6inefficient  7innovative  12top-of-the-line  2efficient  7innovative  12top-of-the-line  3first-rate  8low-tech  13unique  4high-end  9novel  14wacky  5high-tech  10revolutionary  Look at the ads. Check the word that best describes each product. Explain your choice.  TIRED OF RUINING YOUR BOOKS BY FOLDING THE PAGES?  Don't ruin another page! Never lose your place again!  How much time do you waste writing your return address?  Never write your return address?  Never write your return address?  Never write your return address again!  1 low-tech novel unique  2 efficient wacky cutting-edge							
Write the letter of the definition that matches each word. You will use some definitions more than  a. is silly in an exciting or amusing way  b. works well without wasting time, money, or energy  c. uses new technology  f. offers high quality  1 cutting-edge	3/4	No					
a. is silly in an exciting or amusing way  b. works well without wasting time, money, or energy  c. uses new technology  1	ON						
a. is silly in an exciting or amusing way  b. works well without wasting time, money, or energy  c. uses new technology  f. offers high quality  c. uses new technology  f. offers high quality  c. uses new technology  f. offers high quality  f. of							
amusing way  b. works well without wasting time, money, or energy  c. uses new technology  f. offers high quality  1 cutting-edge	Wri	te the letter of the defin	ition tha	t matches each wor	d. You will use	some definitions mor	e than
machines or methods in business or industry  c. uses new technology  f. offers high quality  1 cutting-edge	a.					g. uses new idea	S
1 cutting-edge	b.		-	machines or me	ethods in	ere Bley on Dimet	
1cutting-edge	c.	uses new technology					
2efficient		madw enom heer where	sharawa i				
3first-rate							
4high-end 9novel 14wacky 5high-tech 10revolutionary  Look at the ads. Check the word that best describes each product. Explain your choice.  TIRED OF RUINING YOUR BOOKS BY FOLDING THE PAGES?  Don't ruin another page! Never lose your place again!  Never write your return address again!  1low-technovel unique 2efficient wacky cutting-edge.	2.	efficient					
Look at the ads. Check the word that best describes each product. Explain your choice.  TIRED OF RUINING YOUR BOOKS BY FOLDING THE PAGES?  Don't ruin another page! Never lose your place again!  Never write your return address again!  1. □ low-tech □ novel □ unique  2. □ efficient □ wacky □ cutting-edge	3.	first-rate					
Look at the ads. Check the word that best describes each product. Explain your choice.  TIRED OF RUINING YOUR BOOKS BY FOLDING THE PAGES?  Don't ruin another page! Never lose your place again!  Never write your return address again!  1. □ low-tech □ novel □ unique  2. □ efficient □ wacky □ cutting-edge	4.	high-end	9	novel	14.	wacky	
Look at the ads. Check the word that best describes each product. Explain your choice.  TIRED OF RUINING YOUR BOOKS BY FOLDING THE PAGES?  Don't ruin another page! Never lose your place again!  Never write your return address again!  1.   low-tech   novel   unique   2.   efficient   wacky   cutting-edge	5.	high-tech	10	revolutionary			
TIRED OF RUINING YOUR BOOKS BY FOLDING THE PAGES?  Don't ruin another page! Never lose your place again!  How much time do you waste writing your return address?  Never write your return address again!  2. □ efficient □ wacky □ cutting-edge							
YOUR BOOKS BY FOLDING THE PAGES?  Don't ruin another page! Never lose your place again!  Never write your return address again!  1. □ low-tech □ novel □ unique  2. □ efficient □ wacky □ cutting-edge	Loc	ok at the ads. Check the	word t	hat best describes	each product	. Explain your choice	S. W
1. □ low-tech □ novel □ unique 2. □ efficient □ wacky □ cutting-edge		YOUR BOOKS BY FOLDING THE PAGES? Don't ruin another			do you wa writing yo return add	aste our	wenue ontario
1. □ low-tech □ novel □ unique 2. □ efficient □ wacky □ cutting-edge	pu	place again!		blirow need	again!		, W5,
					<u> </u>		1. 1
			Lunion	16 2	. L. etticient		-edge



Now you can hear, see, and smell your favorite programs! This will change cooking shows forever!



WHO
NEEDS BAND
MEMBERS
WHEN YOU'VE
GOT ONE
MAN BAND?

3.	10	high-tech	☐ low-tech	efficient
			bride Contest	

4.		wacky		state-of-the-art		cutting-edge
----	--	-------	--	------------------	--	--------------

#### EVERY KID'S DREAM COMES TRUE.

Just type in the assignment, and out comes your homework!



5.		innovative		inefficient		wacky
----	--	------------	--	-------------	--	-------

## Don't let rainy days slow you down!





6.		inefficient	8	low-tech	H I	top-of-the-line
----	--	-------------	---	----------	-----	-----------------

## LESSON 4

Read the article *Antibiotics* on page 94 in the Student's Book again. Match the terms in the first column with their definitions. Write the letters on the lines.



16

- 1. \_\_\_\_ tetracycline
- 2. \_\_\_\_ penicillin
- 3. \_\_\_\_ viral illness
- 4. \_\_\_\_ antibiotic-resistant bacteria
- a. anti-bacterial powder that was made from mold
- b. bacteria that don't respond to antibiotics
- c. drug that stops the growth of bacteria
- d. sickness that does not need antibiotics

#### 17

#### ... RUBE GOLDBERG .....

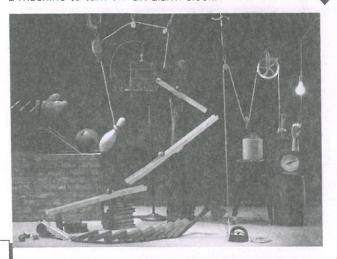
Of all the wacky inventions people have designed, none can compare to the innovative creations of an award-winning cartoonist Rube Goldberg. Rube Goldberg was born in San Francisco in 1883. He earned a degree in engineering, but he wasn't interested in it. He preferred drawing cartoons that made fun of the changes that were happening in the early twentieth century.

In the early 1900s, people were busy creating new machines to help make life easier and get things done faster. The U.S. Patent Office was flooded every year with new inventions for absolutely everything. Rube Goldberg saw the humor and dangers in the new inventions that were changing the lives of ordinary people. And so, for over fifty years, he drew cartoons that made fun of the new machines. He drew "inventions" that used simple everyday items-buckets, cups, balls, sticks, etc.-connected to each other in funny ways to get the simplest task done in many complicated steps. Rube Goldberg took the simplest task and, using the most low-tech technology, made it the most complicated task with high-tech design. His inventions became so famous that his name has been included as a noun in Webster's Dictionary.

One invention, for example, was the "Self-Operating Napkin," which automatically wipes a person's chin. Here's how it works: A person lifts a soup spoon to his/her mouth. The spoon pulls a string, which makes a larger spoon throw a cracker to a parrot. The parrot

Rube Goldberg (n.) a comically involved, complicated invention, laboriously contrived to perform a simple operation

jumps to catch the cracker. The stand, on which the parrot was sitting, falls over and makes bird seeds fall into a bucket. The extra weight in the bucket pulls a string, which lights a lighter. The lighter sets off a fire cracker that causes a knife to cut another string. A pendulum that was attached to the string swings back and forth. It has a napkin attached to it, so when it swings, it wipes the person's chin. Thirteen steps make the chin clean, just by lifting a spoon! Today, in memory of Rube Goldberg, The National Rube Goldberg Machine Contest is held each year. Teams compete to create machines to do the simplest tasks in no less than twenty steps. Recent winning inventions have included a machine to squeeze orange juice, a machine to toast bread, and a machine to turn off an alarm clock.



		true	laise	no imormation
1.	In the early twentieth century there were a lot of dangerous inventions.			
2.	Rube Goldberg designed wacky inventions.	ntil dettai	article A	16 Prad the
3.	He wanted to have his inventions patented.	on en	etracycli	- READING
4.	His designs used new technology.		Deniculin	
5.	The "Self-Operating Napkin" was an efficient tool.		iral lunes	
6.	Rube Goldberg was serious about his inventions.	-resista	ntiblotic	4.
7.	High-tech inventions that are too complicated are called <i>Rube Goldberg</i> .		oacteria	
8.	The inventions sent to The National Rube Goldberg Machine Contest shouldn't take more than twenty steps to complete a task.			

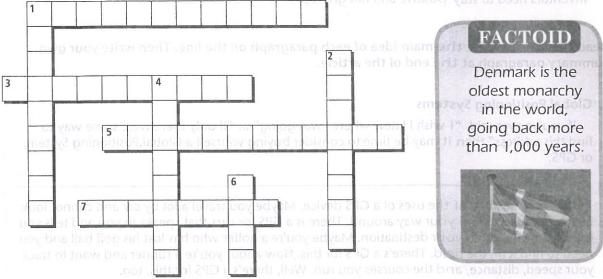
	a good student he breulate it have been discrete
	2. The housewasn't damaged by the humane, so we didn't get any invuence money.
1	But it the house we would have gotten some
	3. The guests aren't cheerfel because the Di len if the Di hadn't left.
SHARE	the quests
0.000	4. Paople aren't looking for the treasure anymore because it's already been discevered.
procedure	algood to svoyib resolar toball till
	5. They're still thinking of a name for the baby, because she hasn't been given one yet.
S	ALLENGE. Create a Rube Goldberg machine that completes a simple task in many complications. Describe the machine on a separate sheet of paper. You can also draw a picture of it.  AR BOOSTER
(	omplete the sentences with <u>if</u> or <u>unless</u> .
1	She's not going to go to Brown University they offer her a big scholarship.
2	I wouldn't say that I didn't have the documents to prove it.
	I didn't need the item now, I'd order it online. It's much cheaper.
4	Jan doesn't wear boots they're from this store.
5	Mr. Winston always eats lunch in the park it's not raining or cold. word it's
6	they offer her a really high salary, she's not going to take the job.
C	ad each pair of sentences. Complete the second sentence in each pair with wish + the corre use so that it has the same meaning as the first sentence.
1	Yesterday, I wanted it to snow. Should be stead my idea it would snow Yesterday, I wished it would snow
2	So now you have the idea, what's next? Once you settle on the worm available of the idea of the idea.
	market you want to sell it to. Get to know as much as you can about the customers who will but product. Make sure it will be profitable.
3	I should have invented the computer.
	Main idea:  Once you have identified the market for your invention, write a business plan, possibly create and a stress plan, possibly create and plan a
4	Once you have identified the market for your invention, write a business plan, possibly create sample of your product, and then go out and try! seems a driver's license.
	Kevin Moran de sol los of que vio l'action de partir à diver's license.
_	The doctor wants the patient to start eating more fruits and vegetables
Э	Main idea:

G Co	implete the past unreal conditional s	sentences, using active or passive forms. I mail of anid?
feated?	Mark is a great student who was chos	sen to represent the school. If he weren't such
	a good student, he wouldn't have be	en chosen.
2.	The house wasn't damaged by the hu	urricane, so we didn't get any insurance money.
	But if the house	, we would have gotten some money.
3.	The guests aren't cheerful because th	
	the guests	
4.		anymore because it's already been discovered.
	If it hadn't yet been discovered, peop	oleit.
5.		e baby, because she hasn't been given one yet.
	If the baby	a name, they wouldn't be thinking of one.
6.		oration because she moved out of the country. If she hadn't
		for Hunter Corporation
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	ARTIZO DE BUNINA
VRITIN	IG BOOSTER	Complete the sentences with if or unless.
A R	Read the article. Write the main idea	of each paragraph on the line.
		3. I didn't need the item now, I'd order
idea, simp	Many people think that becoming an inv , researching the market for the idea, a ole, however, and can often be a time-c	ventor is a simple process of three steps: having a bright nd then selling that idea to a large company. It's not that consuming, difficult process. So let's take a look at what you
	lain idea:	
any i pate who	idea they like, do research to check tha ent your idea from being copied. Think o says, "He wouldn't have been able to	nstorm your ideas with colleagues, friends, and family. For at your idea is original. Decide if you want to protect or carefully about this, as you do not want to be an inventor steal my idea if I had patented it."
M	lain idea:	Yesterday, I Wished it Would snow
mar		Once you settle on the idea for your invention, study the as much as you can about the customers who will buy your
	/ain idea:	3. I should have invented the computer.
sam coul	Once you have identified the market for apple of your product, and then go out a ld meet with a lot of rejection. Keep go	your invention, write a business plan, possibly create a and try to sell it. This is a challenging stage because you bing and don't give up. Do not lose sight of your goal—seeing
N	dain idea:and vegetables	5. The doctor wants the patient to start eating more frui

C

D	summarizes the article.
	Summary 1: Becoming an inventor is not as easy as it seems. It is a complex process that involve many steps and takes a lot of time and energy. However, success will more likely come to those inventors who keep positive and never give up.
	Summary 2: It is a long and time-consuming process to become an inventor. It involves a lot of steps: brainstorming ideas, checking competition, applying for patents, studying the market, wribusiness plans, and then going out and selling the idea. The latter can be discouraging at times, inventors need to stay positive and not give up.
0	
	Read the article. Write the main idea of each paragraph on the line. Then write your <u>own</u> summary paragraph at the end of the article.
	Clobal Positioning Systems
	Global Positioning Systems
	If you've ever said, "I wish I knew where I was going" or "If only there were some way to find this address" then it may be time to consider buying yourself a Global Positioning System, or GPS.
	Main idea:
	exactly flow to get to your destination. Maybe you're a golfer who has lost his golf ball and you
	exactly how to get to your destination. Maybe you're a golfer who has lost his golf ball and you need to find it on the field. There's a GPS for this. How about you're a runner and want to track your speed, distance, and the courses you run. Well, there's a GPS for this, too.  Main idea:
	what kinds of GPS devices are there? Well, GPS devices come in all kinds of shapes and sizes, and are available in a variety of prices. Some are small and can fit into a pocket, and others are waterproof. And for people who don't like to carry anything extra with them, GPS systems are also available on smart phones.
	waterproof. And for people who don't like to carry anything extra with them, GPS systems are
	what kinds of GPS devices are there? Well, GPS devices come in all kinds of shapes and sizes, and are available in a variety of prices. Some are small and can fit into a pocket, and others are waterproof. And for people who don't like to carry anything extra with them, GPS systems are also available on smart phones.  Main idea:  Main idea:
	what kinds of GPS devices are there? Well, GPS devices come in all kinds of shapes and sizes, and are available in a variety of prices. Some are small and can fit into a pocket, and others are waterproof. And for people who don't like to carry anything extra with them, GPS systems are also available on smart phones.  Main idea:  Main idea:
	what kinds of GPS devices are there? Well, GPS devices come in all kinds of shapes and sizes, and are available in a variety of prices. Some are small and can fit into a pocket, and others are waterproof. And for people who don't like to carry anything extra with them, GPS systems are also available on smart phones.  Main idea:  Main idea:  Main idea:
	what kinds of GPS devices are there? Well, GPS devices come in all kinds of shapes and sizes, and are available in a variety of prices. Some are small and can fit into a pocket, and others are waterproof. And for people who don't like to carry anything extra with them, GPS systems are also available on smart phones.  Main idea:  Main idea:  Main idea:
	what kinds of GPS devices are there? Well, GPS devices come in all kinds of shapes and sizes, and are available in a variety of prices. Some are small and can fit into a pocket, and others are waterproof. And for people who don't like to carry anything extra with them, GPS systems are also available on smart phones.  Main idea:
	what kinds of GPS devices are there? Well, GPS devices come in all kinds of shapes and sizes, and are available in a variety of prices. Some are small and can fit into a pocket, and others are waterproof. And for people who don't like to carry anything extra with them, GPS systems are also available on smart phones.  Main idea:  Main idea:  Main idea:
	Main idea:  Main idea:  What kinds of GPS devices are there? Well, GPS devices come in all kinds of shapes and sizes, and are available in a variety of prices. Some are small and can fit into a pocket, and others are waterproof. And for people who don't like to carry anything extra with them, GPS systems are also available on smart phones.  Main idea:
	meed to find it on the field. There's a GPS for this. How about you're a runner and want to track your speed, distance, and the courses you run. Well, there's a GPS for this, too.  Main idea:  What kinds of GPS devices are there? Well, GPS devices come in all kinds of shapes and sizes, and are available in a variety of prices. Some are small and can fit into a pocket, and others are waterproof. And for people who don't like to carry anything extra with them, GPS systems are also available on smart phones.  Main idea:  Main idea:
	what kinds of GPS devices are there? Well, GPS devices come in all kinds of shapes and sizes, and are available in a variety of prices. Some are small and can fit into a pocket, and others are waterproof. And for people who don't like to carry anything extra with them, GPS systems are also available on smart phones.  Main idea:
	Main idea:  Main idea:  What kinds of GPS devices are there? Well, GPS devices come in all kinds of shapes and sizes, and are available in a variety of prices. Some are small and can fit into a pocket, and others are waterproof. And for people who don't like to carry anything extra with them, GPS systems are also available on smart phones.  Main idea:

1 ... Complete the crossword puzzle. Use the clues below to help you. and both standard senious



#### Across

- 1. In a \_\_\_\_\_, one person holds all the political power.
- 3. A democracy, a dictatorship, and a monarchy are three types of \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. A establishes the basic laws of a democratic country. The elgobol to but decreases
- 7. An \_\_\_\_\_ is held so that people can choose someone for an official position.

#### Down

- 1. In a \_\_\_\_\_, people in the government are elected by citizens.
- 2. The activities involved with gaining power in a country's government are called \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. A king or queen is the head of government in a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. Citizens in a democracy \_\_\_\_\_ to choose their leaders.
- 2 Read each pair of sentences. Write "=" if the sentences have the same or similar meanings. Write "≠" if the meanings are different.
  - 1. Shoot. \_\_\_\_
- \_\_ Ask your question.
  - 2. What are you up to these days?
- What are you doing tomorrow?

3. I'm leaning toward Smith.

I may vote for Smith.

4. No worries.

It wouldn't be a good idea.

5. Let's catch up.

I often talk a lot.

Harri da crass	Lance also at a state	lpful advices: []	you a lot of he	for can give	. A career counse
50	learn about politi	162:			
☐ books	newspapers	L television			There are a lot or real start.  Do you have time.
Name and Address of the Address of t					
1					
at describes a escribes a per	a person <u>most</u> su son <u>least</u> suppor	pportive of char tive of change.	nge, and finisl	h on the rig	on the left with th
conservative	liberal	moderate	radical	reactiona	ry
1				ATEC A SECOND	- HW
					Match each word
	d from the box i				
-	having reason				3. agree
Constant nat s		void all political c	_		
driving angular		tical and social ch	s zi paidlemnz		re freedom
asiq e domivi un s	Mr. Holandowski	eme political and	9		
driver's Loense. I driving some or	preferring no	t to risk political			
I hope it's	not inappropriate	e to ask, but are y	ou a bit reacti	onary?	
1_ Would yo	u mind if I asked y	ou a question?			
That's a g	ood question! But	t I feel a little unc	omfortable dis	cussing poli	tics these days.
	u could say that.				
I guess yo					
Not at all.	What do you war				
Not at all.					
Not at all. I understa	and. It's kind of a d	controversial sub			
Not at all I understa	and. It's kind of a d	controversial sub			
Not at all I understa ircle the word We can ask t	and. It's kind of a d	controversial sub correctly comple vice / advices.			

8	Read each sentence. If the sentence is correct, write $\underline{C}$ . If the correct it.	
	1. She loves to discuss work. <u>C</u>	
	2. A career counselor can give you a lot of helpful advices.	
	3. There are a lot of news to tell you about!	
	4. Do you have times to help us?	
	5. He has made a lot of progress with this issue.	
	6. Good informations are hard to find	
	7. Government officials from both sides are meeting to discuss	a peace
	8. They organized a conference on children's health and educa	tion
bnow	9. Money is collected to help families living in the poverty.	4 Organize the words in the box
	10. Without proofs, the police can't arrest him.	
LESS	Son 2	conservative liberal
9	Match each word or phrase with the correct definition. 1. in favor of2. againstb. opposed to, not supporting	
	3. agree c. not right an amount on alden	
	3. agree c. not right an amount of a month of a m	FACTOID
		FACTOID  How young is too young?  The minimum driving age refers to
10	4. disagree d. have the same opinion to be supporting, thinking to be supporting, thinking	How young is too young?  The minimum driving age refers to the youngest age at which a person can legally obtain a driver's license. Here are some minimum driving ages around
10	4. disagree d. have the same opinion below e. supporting, thinking something is a good idea	How young is too young?  The minimum driving age refers to the youngest age at which a person can legally obtain a driver's license. Here are some minimum driving ages around the world. (Note that the ages shown here are minimums in a country, and in
10	<ul> <li>4. disagree d. have the same opinion</li> <li>5. wrong e. supporting, thinking something is a good idea</li> <li>Read each sentence. Write <u>True</u> or <u>False</u>.</li> <li>1. A controversial issue often causes disagreement</li> </ul>	How young is too young?  The minimum driving age refers to the youngest age at which a person can legally obtain a driver's license. Here are some minimum driving ages around the world. (Note that the ages shown here are minimums in a country, and in some cases, certain states or provinces may have higher minimum ages.)
10	<ul> <li>4. disagree d. have the same opinion</li> <li>5. wrong e. supporting, thinking something is a good idea</li> <li>Read each sentence. Write True or False.</li> <li>1. A controversial issue often causes disagreement among people</li> <li>2. If an action is prohibited, then it is allowed or</li> </ul>	How young is too young?  The minimum driving age refers to the youngest age at which a person can legally obtain a driver's license. Here are some minimum driving ages around the world. (Note that the ages shown here are minimums in a country, and in some cases, certain states or provinces may have higher minimum ages.)  Niger Curação Venezuela
10	<ul> <li>4. disagree d. have the same opinion</li> <li>5. wrong e. supporting, thinking something is a good idea</li> <li>Read each sentence. Write True or False.</li> <li>1. A controversial issue often causes disagreement among people</li> <li>2. If an action is prohibited, then it is allowed or permitted</li> <li>3. If you lower something, then you reduce it or</li> </ul>	How young is too young?  The minimum driving age refers to the youngest age at which a person can legally obtain a driver's license. Here are some minimum driving ages around the world. (Note that the ages shown here are minimums in a country, and in some cases, certain states or provinces may have higher minimum ages.)  Niger Curação Venezuela Poland Canada
10	<ul> <li>4. disagree d. have the same opinion</li> <li>5. wrong e. supporting, thinking something is a good idea</li> <li>Read each sentence. Write True or False.</li> <li>1. A controversial issue often causes disagreement among people</li> <li>2. If an action is prohibited, then it is allowed or permitted</li> <li>3. If you lower something, then you reduce it or make it smaller</li> </ul>	How young is too young?  The minimum driving age refers to the youngest age at which a person can legally obtain a driver's license. Here are some minimum driving ages around the world. (Note that the ages shown here are minimums in a country, and in some cases, certain states or provinces may have higher minimum ages.)  Niger Curação Venezuela Poland
10		How young is too young?  The minimum driving age refers to the youngest age at which a person can legally obtain a driver's license. Here are some minimum driving ages around the world. (Note that the ages shown here are minimums in a country, and in some cases, certain states or provinces may have higher minimum ages.)  Niger Curaçao Venezuela Poland Canada U.S.A Ethiopia 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23

W90 UNIT 9

1. a. Management requires all employees to attend the meeting.

b. Management requires to attend the meeting.

	۷.	<ul><li>b. The organization encourages eve</li></ul>	1 3			
	3.	<ul><li>a. I can't afford to buy anything ext</li><li>b. I can't afford me to buy anything</li></ul>	ra right now.	on leads to orities		
	4.	<ul><li>a. The city prohibits everyone over</li><li>b. The city prohibits overnight park</li></ul>	night parking on all maj	of mentioned in the ucation asserts re- ucation steers re- nding of others.		
	5.	<ul><li>a. They invited a band to play at the</li><li>b. They invited to play at their party</li></ul>	. ,		ad the blog	
	6.	<ul><li>a. The children can't wait to open p</li><li>b. The children can't wait the family</li></ul>				
12	Co	mplete the sentences with an appr	opriate object. Write <u>X</u>	if an object isn't	necessary.	
	1.	She decided X to vote	for the liberal candidat			
	2.	The managers permitted	<u>kers</u> to leave early on t	he holiday.		
	3.	He invited to go to	the party a self-desired it	0.000 years) this he		
		Experts encourage				
	5	The police were warning	to stay away from	the area		
	6	Most students cap't afford	to buy a lot of ly	ure area.		
	7	Most students can't afford	est researed servets			
		The baby refuses to				
		Will you please remind				
		Did you agree to pa				
	10.	Where can I learn to				
13	or	HAT ABOUT YOU? Complete the so an object and an infinitive.		vay. Use verbs fol		
	1.	When I was a child, I pretended	day, 10:30 a.m. The bistory of our placety	eattle yester	Skeptical-in-S	
		My school allows	LEATH OF LAL		- A.M	
	3.	If I were having a party, I'd invite		eel Climate change i		
		In my opinion, everyone deserves _		ranves a car, tijes on		
					hami the air	NE.
<b>-</b> 00						
ESS	ON	Lingher sea levels				
14	Re	ad the article on page 104 in the State of the correct answer.	tudent's Book again. C			e the
READING HENSION	1.	Corruption is	o something before it's too			
		a. people taking bribes		c. racial discrimin		
	2.	Poverty causes a. people to earn \$1.00 a day	<b>b.</b> children to die	c. bad governme		
	3.	Acts of terrorism are increasing beca a. are poor	ause some people b. use military force	c. watch too mu	ch TV	

4.	a. natural	<b>b.</b> intolerance of others	z. a. The organization end
5.	Discrimination leads to a. racial minorities		c. unfairness towards other
6.	One item <u>not</u> mentioned in the a a. better education and understanding of others		

15 Read the blog. Then answer the questions.

## MY BLOG-YOUR BLOG

## Today's topic: Global warming

Every day light from the sun warms the earth, causing it to release heat. Gases in the earth's atmosphere—mostly carbon dioxide  $(CO_2)$ —stop some of the heat from escaping into space so that the earth is kept warm. For the past 10,000 years, this heat has kept the earth at regular temperatures. However, over the past 100 years, scientists have noticed higher levels of  $CO_2$ . More  $CO_2$  means more heat, which means higher temperatures on earth. We've already seen some consequences of global warming. Nine of the ten warmest years in history have occurred in the last fifteen years. Ground that has been frozen since the last Ice Age is melting. There are more hurricanes and catastrophic storms than ever before.

So, what do YOU think is causing global warming? What, if anything, should we do about it?

Post your comment

Comments

Gloria yesterday, 9:00 A.M. I SISQIDINEQ OL

What's the big deal? The earth is warmer by only 1 degree Fahrenheit. Talk to me when it's 7 degrees warmer.

Brad yesterday, 9:20 A.M.

Look at the facts. Higher temperatures have already made the ice in Antarctica melt faster, causing higher sea levels. By 2100, when the temperatures <u>are</u> 7 degrees higher, many coastal areas will be flooded.

Skeptical-in-Seattle yesterday, 10:30 A.M.

Climate has changed many times in the history of our planet. It is only natural. Let's not lose sleep over it, alright?

Kris yesterday, 12:07 P.M.

I totally disagree! Climate change <u>is</u> natural, but what is happening today is not! Global warming is the fault of everyone who drives a car, flies on a plane, builds factories, and cuts trees. All of that creates more CO<sub>2</sub>. We must stop damaging our planet for future generations. We must urge our government leaders to control industries that harm the air.

Reactionary yesterday, 1:13 P.M.

This whole debate is useless. People who say we need to change the way we live are radicals. The earth is always warming and cooling. We just need to accept it and learn how to live in a naturally changing climate. We could, for example, build homes farther away from the water to avoid higher sea levels.

Winston yesterday, 2:17 P.M.

The Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) reported after reviewing the scientific research that it is more than 90% certain that humans are causing global warming. Gases from cars and factories are causing temperatures to rise. We need to do something before it's too late!

Linda noiseiminozio lei yesterday, 2:33 p.m. 19WOQ.d

HA! 90% certain leaves 10% uncertain. The IPCC report has lots of errors and is exaggerated. It isn't <u>only</u> the cars and factories that are causing global warming. What about the changes in the sun's brightness during its 11-year solar cycle? It causes temperatures to increase. Erupting volcanoes can produce lots of  $CO_2$  too.

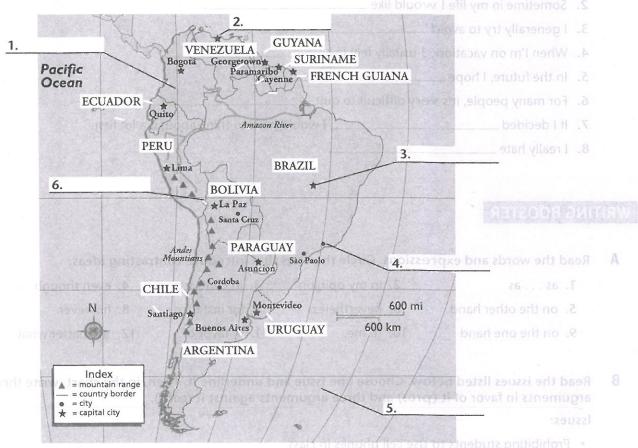
2. What are the effects of global warming?  3. What did the IPCC's report say?  4. How much has the temperature of the earth increased?  5. What are two possible human causes of global warming?  6. What are two possible natural causes of global warming?  6. What are two possible natural causes of global warming?  7. Gloria would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is not a problem."  8. Winston would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is a natural event."  9. Skeptical-in-Seattle would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  9. Winston would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is a natural event."  1. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  2. Winston would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  3. Skeptical-in-Seattle would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  6. What are two possible natural causes of global warming?  7. April 22 <sup>rd</sup> is Earth Day, It was first established in 1970. The purpose of this global holiday is to raise awareness of environmental problems and issues and to promote a health environment for all people. The people is a reliable source for information about global warming is caused by people."  8. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with	1,	What is global warming?	18 Write a letter to you								
3. What did the IPCC's report say?  4. How much has the temperature of the earth increased?  5. What are two possible human causes of global warming?  6. What are two possible natural causes of global warming?  6. What are two possible natural causes of global warming?  6. What are two possible natural causes of global warming?  7. Gloria would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is not a problem."  8. Winston would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is a natural event."  9. Skeptical-in-Seattle would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  9. Kris would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  10. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  11. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  12. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  13. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  14. Write your own response to each statement. Agree or disagree and explain your opinion.  15. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  16. Write your own response to each statement. Agree or disagree and explain your opinion.  17. Leveryone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  18. That's one way to look at it, but I think it's each person's choice whether to vote or not Compared to the people don't participate.  18. Sometimes capital punishment is necessary.  18. All students should be required to wear uniforms to school.											
4. How much has the temperature of the earth increased?  5. What are two possible human causes of global warming?  6. What are two possible natural causes of global warming?  6. What are two possible natural causes of global warming?  7. Winston would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is not a problem."  8. Skeptical-in-Seattle would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  9. Winston would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is a natural event."  9. Skeptical-in-Seattle would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  1. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  1. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  1. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  1. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  1. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  1. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  1. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is c											
6. What are two possible human causes of global warming?  6. What are two possible natural causes of global warming?  6. What are two possible natural causes of global warming?  7. Gloria would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is not a problem."  7. Winston would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is a natural event."  8. Skeptical-in-Seattle would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  9. Winston would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  1. Kris would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  2. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  3. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  4. Kris would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  7. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  8. What are two possible natural causes of global warming is a natural event."  9. January display the people of this global holiday is to raise awareness of environment for all people. Plants, and animals. Each year on this day people rededicate themselves to taking care of the Earth.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's t											
Read each statement. Would the blogger agree or disagree with the statement? Circle agree or disagree. Explain your answer.  1. Gloria would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is not a problem."  2. Winston would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is a natural event."  3. Skeptical-in-Seattle would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  4. Kris would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  6. Winston would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  7. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  8. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  8. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  9. January on this day people rededicate themselves to taking care of the Earth.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  2. Sometimes capital punishment is necessary.  3. All students should be required to wear uniforms to school.											
Read each statement. Would the blogger agree or disagree with the statement? Circle agree or disagree. Explain your answer.  1. Gloria would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is not a problem."  2. Winston would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is a natural event."  3. Skeptical-in-Seattle would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  4. Kris would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming."  ESSON  6. Winter your own response to each statement. Agree or disagree and explain your opinion.  7. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  8. Write your own response to each statement. Agree or disagree and explain your opinion.  9. I Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  2. Sometimes capital punishment is necessary.  3. All students should be required to wear uniforms to school.											
disagree. Explain your answer.  1. Gloria would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is not a problem."  2. Winston would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is a natural event."  3. Skeptical-in-Seattle would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  4. Kris would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming."  ESSON  Write your own response to each statement. Agree or disagree and explain your opinion.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  **That's one way to look at it, but I think it's each person's choice whether to vote or not. Of the people don't participate.  2. Sometimes capital punishment is necessary.  **Tool  3. All students should be required to wear uniforms to school.	6.										
disagree. Explain your answer.  1. Gloria would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is not a problem."  2. Winston would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is a natural event."  3. Skeptical-in-Seattle would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming."  4. Kris would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming."  ESSON  Write your own response to each statement. Agree or disagree and explain your opinion.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  **That's one way to look at it, but I think it's each person's choice whether to vote or not. Of the people don't participate.  2. Sometimes capital punishment is necessary.  **Tool  3. All students should be required to wear uniforms to school.											
is not a problem."  2. Winston would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is a natural event."  3. Skeptical-in-Seattle would agree / disagree with this statement: "Changes must be made to address global warming."  4. Kris would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming."  ESSON  6. Write your own response to each statement. Agree or disagree and explain your opinion.  7. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  7. That's one way to look at it, but I think it's each person's choice whether to vote or not. Constitution is necessary.  8. April 22 <sup>nd</sup> is Earth Day. It was first established in 1970. The purpose of this global holiday is to raise awareness of environmental problems and issues and to promote a health environment for all people, on this day people rededicate themselves to taking care of the Earth.  6. Earth.  6. Esson  6. Esson  6. Esson  7. Write your own response to each statement. Agree or disagree and explain your opinion.  7. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  7. That's one way to look at it, but I think it's each person's choice whether to vote or not. Or I agree with you on that one. A democracy doesn't work if people don't participate.  7. Sometimes capital punishment is necessary.  8. All students should be required to wear uniforms to school.		ad each statement. Would the blogger agree or disagree with the st sagree. Explain your answer.	atement? Circle <u>agree</u> or								
2. Winston would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is a natural event."  3. Skeptical-in-Seattle would agree / disagree with this statement: "Changes must be made to address global statement: "Changes must be made to address global warming."  4. Kris would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming."  EESSON 4. Write your own response to each statement. Agree or disagree and explain your opinion.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  That's one way to look at it, but I think it's each person's choice whether to vote or not. One is a people don't participate.  2. Sometimes capital punishment is necessary.  3. All students should be required to wear uniforms to school.	1.		April 22nd is Earth Day It								
warming is a natural event."  3. Skeptical-in-Seattle would agree / disagree with this statement: "Changes must be made to address global statement: "Changes must be made to address global warming."  4. Kris would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming."  ESSON  Write your own response to each statement. Agree or disagree and explain your opinion.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  That's one way to look at it, but I think it's each person's choice whether to vote or not. Continued to the people don't participate.  2. Sometimes capital punishment is necessary.  3. All students should be required to wear uniforms to school.	2										
3. Skeptical-in-Seattle would agree / disagree with this statement: "Changes must be made to address global issues and to promote a health warming."  4. Kris would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming."  ESSON  17 Write your own response to each statement. Agree or disagree and explain your opinion.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  18 That's one way to look at it, but I think it's each person's choice whether to vote or not. Continued to the statement of	2.	warming is a natural event."									
4. Kris would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."  5. Linda would agree / disagree with this statement: "IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming."  ESSON  Write your own response to each statement. Agree or disagree and explain your opinion.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  That's one way to look at it, but I think it's each person's choice whether to vote or not. C  I agree with you on that one. A democracy doesn't work if people don't participate.  2. Sometimes capital punishment is necessary.  Tou  All students should be required to wear uniforms to school.	3.	statement: "Changes must be made to address global	environmental problems and issues and to promote a healthy environment for all people, plants, and animals. Each year on this day people rededicate								
#IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming."  #IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming."  ##IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming."  ##IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming."  ##IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming.  ##IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming.  ##IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming.  ##IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming.  ##IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming.  ##IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming.  ##IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming.  ##IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming.  ##IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming.  ##IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming.  ##IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming in the Earth.  ##IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming in the Earth.  ###IPCC is a reliable source for information about global warming in the Earth.  ###################################	4.	Kris would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is caused by people."									
17 Write your own response to each statement. Agree or disagree and explain your opinion.  1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  That's one way to look at it, but I think it's each person's choice whether to vote or not. Of I agree with you on that one. A democracy doesn't work if people don't participate.  2. Sometimes capital punishment is necessary.  YOU  3. All students should be required to wear uniforms to school.	5.	"IPCC is a reliable source for information about	the Earth								
<ul> <li>Write your own response to each statement. Agree or disagree and explain your opinion.</li> <li>1. Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.  That's one way to look at it, but I think it's each person's choice whether to vote or not. Of the image of the image</li></ul>		arase that correctly completes each sentence.	B Circle the word or pl								
<ol> <li>Write your own response to each statement. Agree or disagree and explain your opinion.</li> <li>Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.         You That's one way to look at it, but I think it's each person's choice whether to vote or not. One of the person's choice whether to vote or not. On the person's choice whether to vote or not. On the person's choice whether to vote or not. On the person's choice whether to vote or not. On the person's choice whether to vote or not. On the person's choice whether to vote or not. On the person's choice whether to vote or not. On the person's choice whether to vote or not. On the person's choice whether to vote or not. On the person's choice whether to vote or not. On the person's choice whether to vote or not. On the person's choice whether to vote or not. On the person of the person's choice whether to vote or not. On the person of the person</li></ol>	ESSON	A									
<ol> <li>Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.         That's one way to look at it, but I think it's each person's choice whether to vote or not. Of the state of the</li></ol>	<b>17</b> w										
2. Sometimes capital punishment is necessary.  You  3. All students should be required to wear uniforms to school.		Everyone in a democracy should vote. It's their responsibility.									
Complete each sentence with a gerund or an infinitive. When either a gerund or an infinitive is correct, fill in the blank with both forms of smrolinu raw of beriuper ad bluods stnabuts IIA.		I agree with you on that one. A democracy doesn't work if peo	ople don't participate.								
3. All students should be required to wear uniforms to school.	2.	Sometimes capital punishment is necessary.	8. In some parts of the								
correct, fill in the blank with both forms of amolinu raw of being ad bluods at a straight of the blank with both forms of amolinu raw of the blank with both forms of the blank with blank with both forms of the blank with blank											
(opino) (continuo)	3.	All students should be required to wear uniforms to school.	correct, fill in the bla								
2. Some people don't likeabout politics.		니크레이									
4. The world would be a better place if all countries were democracies.	4.	The world would be a better place if all countries were democracies.									
4. movies is one of my favorite activities. Cov. Sou should avoid on the phone when you drive.											
You should avoid on the phone when you drive.      I would like for the government when I finish college.		3157									

•	What are the effects of global warming?
	What did the IPCC's report say?
9	How much has the term perature of the earth increased to any set of the driving age to 21
•	What are two possible fruman causes of global was planted in this country.
	What are average supple tracural fauses of global worming? Supple
	actionally statement. Would the biogger agree or disagree with the statement? Circk a
-	the some some some some some
d)	Gloria would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global warming is not a problem." April 22" is Earth 0
1.	Winston would agree / disagree with this statements "Globat
0	mplete each phrase with the correct unit expression from the box. والموازدها المادة والمادة وا
2	statement: "Changes must be made to address closed and statement and sold statement and s
	Kris would agree / disagree with this statement: "Global plants, and animals."
	a(n) of news 4. a(n) of peace of yd besus a primisw
	a(n) of news 4. a(n) of peace of yellow should should be a feature of the should be a feature of apple pie of a
	a(n) of news 4. a(n) of peace of yet because primasw
	a(n) of news 4. a(n) of peace of the decomposition of the dec
i.	a(n) of news 4. a(n) of peace of violence o
ii	a(n) of news 4. a(n) of peace of yellows a primitive a(n) of tea 5. a(n) of apple pie of violence a(n) of rice 6. a(n) of violence a primitive adolp to the word or phrase that correctly completes each sentence.  Sandra Jensen wanted to work in the government to make sure that justices are / justice
ii.	a(n) of news 4. a(n) of peace of violence o
	a(n) of news 4. a(n) of peace of yellows all primary a(n) of tea 5. a(n) of apple pie 6. a(n) of violence 6. a(n) of violence 7. Sandra Jensen wanted to work in the government to make sure that justices are / justice People who want to be lawyers study laws / law in school.  I got my hairs / hair cut at a new salon last week.
. ii	a(n) of news
	a(n) of news
. ii	a(n) of tea of apple pie of violence of apple pie of violence of violence of violence of violence of violence of violence
	a(n) of news a(n) of peace of apple pie a(n) of rice for a(n) of violence for a(n) of rice for a(n) of violence for a(n)
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	a(n) of news a(n) of peace a(n) of apple pie a(n) of rice a(n) of violence a(n)
iii	a(n) of news
	a(n) of news
	a(n) of news
	a(n) of news

- 12		nportant if you want to make a difference.
		tudy medicine next year.
9	D. Tom expectsbe	home by eight.
٧	VHAT ABOUT YOU? Complete	each sentence in your <u>own</u> way. Use a gerund or an infiniti
1	under the map to bnim t'nob l	even though a lot of people don't like it.
	. Sometime in my life I would like	
3	. I generally try to avoid	2
4	. When I'm on vacation, I usually	/ feel like GUYANA AIBUX VENEZUBIA
	. In the future, I hopeAMAI	
		cult to quit
		, I would have to think about it a lot first.
	. I really hate	
		PRAZIL
K		. Circle the ones that introduce contrasting ideas.  in my opinion  3. in contrast 4. even though
R	<ol> <li>as as</li> <li>on the other hand</li> <li>on the one hand</li> <li>on the issues listed below. Choose</li> </ol>	in my opinion 3. in contrast 4. even though nevertheless 7. for instance 8. however to me, 11. in favor of 12. no matter what cose one issue and underline it. Then, in the chart, write the
R	1. as as 2. if 5. on the other hand 6. if 9. on the one hand 10. if ead the issues listed below. Chorguments in favor of it (pros) are	<ol> <li>in my opinion</li> <li>in contrast</li> <li>even though</li> <li>however</li> <li>in favor of</li> <li>no matter what</li> </ol>
R	1. as as 2. if 5. on the other hand 6. if 9. on the one hand 10. if ead the issues listed below. Chorguments in favor of it (pros) are ssues:	in my opinion  3. in contrast 4. even though 8. however 11. in favor of 12. no matter what 13. in the chart, write the chart of three arguments against it (cons).
R	1. as as 2. if 5. on the other hand 6. if 9. on the one hand 10. if dead the issues listed below. Choorguments in favor of it (pros) are assues:  Prohibiting students to use cell	in my opinion  3. in contrast 4. even though nevertheless 7. for instance 8. however 12. no matter what cose one issue and underline it. Then, and three arguments against it (cons).
R	1. as as 2. if 5. on the other hand 6. if 9. on the one hand 10. it dead the issues listed below. Chooring ments in favor of it (pros) are ssues: Prohibiting students to use cell Banning certain books from sci	in my opinion  3. in contrast 4. even though nevertheless 7. for instance 8. however 12. no matter what cose one issue and underline it. Then, and three arguments against it (cons).
R	1. as as 2. if 5. on the other hand 6. if 9. on the one hand 10. if dead the issues listed below. Chooring the state of it (pros) are ssues: Prohibiting students to use cell Banning certain books from scill Censorship of violent movies	in my opinion  3. in contrast 4. even though 8. however 11. in favor of 12. no matter what 13. in the chart, write the chart of three arguments against it (cons).  14. even though 15. however 16. no matter what 17. no matter what 18. however 19. no matter what
R	1. as as 2. if 5. on the other hand 6. if 9. on the one hand 10. it dead the issues listed below. Chooring ments in favor of it (pros) are ssues: Prohibiting students to use cell Banning certain books from sci	in my opinion  3. in contrast 4. even though 8. however 11. in favor of 12. no matter what 13. in the chart, write the chart of the cha
R	1. as as 2. if 5. on the other hand 6. if 9. on the one hand 10. if dead the issues listed below. Chooring the state of it (pros) are ssues: Prohibiting students to use cell Banning certain books from scill Censorship of violent movies	in my opinion  3. in contrast 4. even though 8. however 11. in favor of 12. no matter what 14. oose one issue and underline it. Then, in the chart, write the odd three arguments against it (cons).  1 phones in class and libraries and libr
R	1. as as 2. if 5. on the other hand 6. if 9. on the one hand 10. if dead the issues listed below. Chooring the state of it (pros) are ssues: Prohibiting students to use cell Banning certain books from scill Censorship of violent movies	11. in favor of 12. no matter what cose one issue and underline it. Then, and three arguments against it (cons).  I phones in class hool libraries  Cons  Cons  Lake T Book T Boo
R	1. as as 2. if 5. on the other hand 6. if 9. on the one hand 10. if dead the issues listed below. Chooring the state of it (pros) are ssues: Prohibiting students to use cell Banning certain books from scill Censorship of violent movies	in my opinion  3. in contrast 4. even though 8. however 11. in favor of 12. no matter what 14. oose one issue and underline it. Then, in the chart, write the odd three arguments against it (cons).  1 phones in class and libraries and libr
R	1. as as 2. if 5. on the other hand 6. if 9. on the one hand 10. if dead the issues listed below. Chooring the state of it (pros) are ssues: Prohibiting students to use cell Banning certain books from scill Censorship of violent movies	11. in favor of 12. no matter what cose one issue and underline it. Then, and three arguments against it (cons).  I phones in class hool libraries  Cons  Cons  Lake T Book T Boo

On a separate sheet of paper, write at least two paragraphs about the issue you chose in Exercise B. Include both the pros and the cons of the issue. Use the expressions for introducing contrasting ideas you identified in Exercise A.

1 Complete the map of South America. Use the information under the map to label the places. Write the letter on the line.



- a. Caracas is the capital city of Venezuela.
- b. Rio de Janeiro is a city in Brazil.
- c. Brasilia is the capital of Brazil.
- d. Lake Titicaca is on the border of Bolivia and Peru.
- e. Bogotá is the capital of Colombia.
- f. The Atlantic Ocean is east of South America.
- 2 Look at the map again and answer the questions.
  - 1. Name the capital of Ecuador.
  - 2. Paramaribo is the capital of which South American country?
  - 3. Name a city in Bolivia that is not the capital city.
  - 4. What is the capital of Uruguay? and sall auzzi and to snow and bus sorg and fitted abulant

о.	Buenos Aires is the capital city of which country?
7.	Which two South American countries do not share a border with an ocean or sea?
	and
W	HAT ABOUT YOU? Name the following geographical features of your country.
	capital city
	another city
3.	border countries
4.	a body of water
5.	another geographical feature
Cir	cle the best response to each question.
1.	"Is it worth seeing?"
2	<ul><li>a. "Yes, you should definitely go."</li><li>b. "No, you don't want to miss it."</li><li>"Should we drive up to see Nunobiki Waterfall in Kiwa Town?"</li></ul>
۷.	a. "No, it's worth seeing."  b. "Yes, it's spectacular!"
3.	"Have you ever seen the volcanoes on Reunion Island?"
	a. "I can't say I have."  b. "What a coincidence!"
4.	"Get a look at the mountains while you're there."  a. "Thanks, we'll take it slow."  b. "Thanks for the suggestion."
5.	"Is that schedule doable in one week?" no belessel energy and belessel energy and belessel energy are the suggestion.
	a. "It'll be busy, but you can handle it." b. "Yes, it's worth seeing."
ON	Switzerland has a population of approximately eight million people?
_	Switzerland has four official languages (German, French, Italian, and Romansh)?
Co	mplete the reading with <u>in</u> , <u>on</u> , or <u>of</u> .
	Chaid avatem 0000 years and 2 aring all a surger than a start and
	PORTUGAL
	Portugal is a nation southwestern Europe, and is the
	western coast the Iberian Peninsula. Spain is both north and west
	Portugal, which is on the Atlantic Ocean. Portugal, which is on the Atlantic Ocean.
	There are many mountains ranges the north, but the largest and highest
	mountain range in the country, Serra da Estrela, is located the central region
	of the country.
	•
	The capital city, Lisbon, is the west coast Portugal. It is also 8.

6 Look at the map. Complete the sentences in your own way. See a man distribution do not be a complete the sentences in your own way.



1	3. "Have you ever seen the volcanoes on Reunion Lini ara/si
2	a. "I can't say I have." to translation as a coincidence!"
3	4. "Get a look at the mountains while you're there." a. "Thanks, we'll take it slow." b. "Thanks, we'll take it slow."
4	"Is that schedule double in one metter on is are located on in one metter in one metter in one i
5	a. "It'll be busy, but you can handle it." to driven sas/as worth seeing."
6	is/are located to

d you know...

- Switzerland has a population of approximately eight million people?
- Switzerland has four official languages (German, French, Italian, and Romansh)?
- The Swiss flag is square, not rectangular?
- Many mountains in the Swiss Alps are over 4000 meters high?

7	WHAT ABOUT YOU? Describe the location of your city or town in relation to some other places.
	Use prepositions of geographical place. Stanting and the Atlantic Stanting

1.	
	There are many mountains ranges the north, but the largest and highest
2.	mountain rangern the country Serra da Estrela, is located. Use central too

of the country.

The city of Porto is located ..... the Dourn River, which is ....: the north.

	Attention But hiking Take plenty of the	n All Hikers: Hiking is can also bedanger.  ood and water. This is a language of the condition of the	great exercise, and it of the services. Follow these rong hike, and it can to give you energy.	an be a lot of fun.	cave cliff dangero dark exhausti	foggy path us rocky slippery ng steep
1	Complete the	sign with the correc	t words from the l	oox. You will not us	e all of the	words.
SO						
	on 2				USATTA 18:01 CP	SHARK
		d: Really? Why do you			HE WAIL C	. Why doesn't
169		d: What do you think a		a vdW C and	-t-t	A PA
	Your friend	d: Why's that?				
		d: I'm thinking about of Don't miss	going on vacation.	Do you have any red	commenda	tions?
		conversations in you				
	Does Jenni	er think Sarah should	go to Pinewood?		☐ Yes	□ No
		'm thinking of taking t 'es. Be sure to see it.	he train to Pinewoo	d. Have you ever bee	en there?	2 Lookatth
		e think the hotel is gre			☐ Yes	□ No
4		Have you heard anyth hear it's overrated.	ing about the new	est Las Vegas hotel?		
	Did Mark li	ke the movie?	This pat		☐ Yes od	□ No □ on □
		What do you think of th t's a must-see.	nat new science fiction	on movie?		
	Carl:	We might go to Wonde Oh, you don't want to hink Bethany should g	miss it.		☐ Yes	□ No
	Should Jere	What did you think of thought it was a was my go on the trip?	te of time.		☐ Yes	□ No

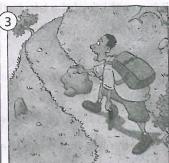
#### Look at the pictures. Check the sentence that matches each picture. Tolkes been 8 11



☐ The path can be very slippery. ☐ Wow! This is

steep!

- ☐ It's really dark. ☐ It can be quite foggy.



- ☐ This path is exhausting.
- ☐ The cliff is ☐ It's really dark.



- ☐ The path is really rocky.

#### Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use too + an adjective and an infinitive.



1. Why doesn't he want to go swimming? \_\_\_\_\_



2. Why can't he read this whole 3. Why isn't she going to wear



book today? \_\_\_\_\_ this dress? \_\_\_\_\_



4. Why don't they see Shark



5. Why isn't he sleeping?



6. Why don't they keep

walking? \_\_\_\_\_

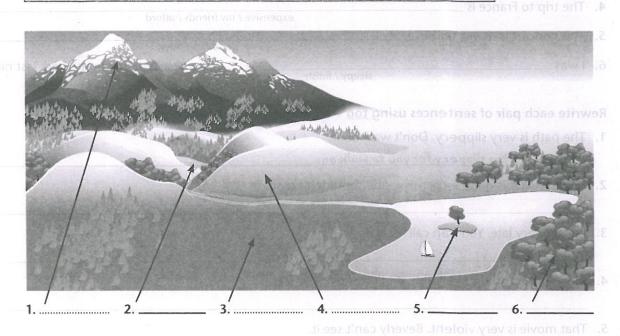
Attack? \_

		This bag is	
	2	heavy / me / carry The monuments you want to see aren't	16 Label the drawing wit
		steen	/ climb
	3.	Jessica is	(12910) (918)
	4.	The trip to France isexpensive / my friends / af	
	5.	This concert is going to be	
		good / us / mis	
	0.	sleepy / finish	my homework last night
14	Po	write each pair of contoness using too , on infinitive and a few l	
-		write each pair of sentences using too + an infinitive and a for phra	ase.
	1.	The path is very slippery. Don't walk on it.	
	2	The path is too slippery for you to walk on.	
	۷.	That sweater is quite expensive. She shouldn't buy it.	
	-		
	3.	It's not very late. You can call Matt now.	
	4	It's so hot. I couldn't possibly drink coffee!	
	т.	res so not. redular t possibly drink conee:	
	5	That was a second and the second and	V
	٠.	That movie is very violent. Beverly can't see it.	
	٥.	That movie is very violent. Beverly can't see it.	12 - Mateir each word to th
		It's 9:00, and the movie is at 9:15. We won't get to the theater on time	17 - Match each word to th
		ie correct definition or description.	17 Match each word to the the constant of the constant of the convenience of the convenie
		ie correct definition or description.	2, a can/on
15	6.	It's 9:00, and the movie is at 9:15. We won't get to the theater on time	2, a canyon 3, flat
15	6. Cii	It's 9:00, and the movie is at 9:15. We won't get to the theater on time	2, a can/on
15	6. Cii	It's 9:00, and the movie is at 9:15. We won't get to the theater on time	2. a canyon 3. flat 4. a forest 5. an island
15	6. Cii 1.	It's 9:00, and the movie is at 9:15. We won't get to the theater on time of the word or phrase that best completes each conversation.  A: Can you tell me the way to the beach?	2. a canyon 3. flat 4. a forest 5. an island 6. a jungle
15	6. Cii 1.	It's 9:00, and the movie is at 9:15. We won't get to the theater on time related to the word or phrase that best completes each conversation.  A: Can you tell me the way to the beach?  B: Not at all. / Yes, it's that way.	2. a canyon 3. flat 4. a forest 5. an island 6. a jungle 7. lush
15	6. Ciii 1.	It's 9:00, and the movie is at 9:15. We won't get to the theater on time role the word or phrase that best completes each conversation.  A: Can you tell me the way to the beach?  B: Not at all. / Yes, it's that way.  A: Be careful at the beach. The water can be / isn't really dangerous.  B: OK, thanks.  A: The undertow is dangerous / too cold	2. a canyon 3. flat 4. a forest 5. an island 6. a jungle 7. lush 8. a valley
15	6. Ciii 1.	It's 9:00, and the movie is at 9:15. We won't get to the theater on time role the word or phrase that best completes each conversation.  A: Can you tell me the way to the beach?  B: Not at all. / Yes, it's that way.  A: Be careful at the beach. The water can be / isn't really dangerous.  B: OK, thanks.  A: The undertow is dangerous / too cold.	2. a canyon 3. flat 4. a forest 5. an island 6. a jungle 7. lush
15	6. Cin 1. 2. 3.	It's 9:00, and the movie is at 9:15. We won't get to the theater on time role the word or phrase that best completes each conversation.  A: Can you tell me the way to the beach?  B: Not at all. / Yes, it's that way.  A: Be careful at the beach. The water can be / isn't really dangerous.  B: OK, thanks.  A: The undertow is dangerous / too cold.	2. a canyon 3. flat 4. a forest 5. an island 6. a jungle 7. lush 8. a valley
15	6. Ciii 1. 2. 3. 4.	It's 9:00, and the movie is at 9:15. We won't get to the theater on time recle the word or phrase that best completes each conversation.  A: Can you tell me the way to the beach?  B: Not at all. / Yes, it's that way.  A: Be careful at the beach. The water can be / isn't really dangerous.  B: OK, thanks.  A: The undertow is dangerous / too cold.  B: I'll be careful.  A: You need to be careful.	2. a canyon 3. flat 4. a forest 5. an island 6. a jungle 7. lush 8. a valley 9. spectacular
15	6. Ciii 1. 2. 3. 4.	It's 9:00, and the movie is at 9:15. We won't get to the theater on time or cle the word or phrase that best completes each conversation.  A: Can you tell me the way to the beach?  B: Not at all. / Yes, it's that way.  A: Be careful at the beach. The water can be / isn't really dangerous.  B: OK, thanks.  A: The undertow is dangerous / too cold.  B: I'll be careful.  A: You need to be careful.  B: Thanks for the risk / warning.	2. a canyon 3. flat 4. a forest 5. an island 6. a jungle 7. lush 8. a valley 9. spectacular
15	6. Ciii 1. 2. 3. 4.	It's 9:00, and the movie is at 9:15. We won't get to the theater on time role the word or phrase that best completes each conversation.  A: Can you tell me the way to the beach?  B: Not at all. / Yes, it's that way.  A: Be careful at the beach. The water can be / isn't really dangerous.  B: OK, thanks.  A: The undertow is dangerous / too cold.  B: I'll be careful.  A: You need to be careful.  B: Thanks for the risk / warning.	2. a canyon 3. flat 4. a forest 5. an island 6. a jungle 7. lush 8. a valley 9. spectacular 18 WHAT ABOUT YOU? 1. a spectacular place:
15 	6. Ciii 1. 2. 3. 4.	It's 9:00, and the movie is at 9:15. We won't get to the theater on time or cle the word or phrase that best completes each conversation.  A: Can you tell me the way to the beach?  B: Not at all. / Yes, it's that way.  A: Be careful at the beach. The water can be / isn't really dangerous.  B: OK, thanks.  A: The undertow is dangerous / too cold.  B: I'll be careful.  A: You need to be careful.  B: Thanks for the risk / warning.	2. a canyon 3. flat 4. a forest 5. an island 6. a jungle 7. lush 8. a valley 9. spectacular 18 WHAT ABOUT YOU? 1. a spectacular place: 2. a mountainous place

## LESSON 3

## Label the drawing with the words in the box. Write the correct nouns on the <u>solid</u> lines. Write the correct adjectives on the <u>dotted</u> lines.

flat	forest	hilly	island	mountainous	valley



17	Match each	word to th	e correct	definition	or description.	

- \_\_\_\_\_ **1.** arid
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. a canyon
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. flat
- 4. a forest
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. an island
- \_\_\_\_ 6. a jungle
- \_\_\_\_ 7. lush
- \_\_\_\_\_ **8.** a valley
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. spectacular

- a. an area of lower land between two mountains or hills
- b. a piece of land that is completely surrounded by water
- c. very dry, receiving very little rain
- d. a thick forest with many large plants and tall trees growing very close together, usually in an area that receives a lot of rain
- e. having a lot of healthy plants with a street with the street and a stre
- f. smooth and level, without higher or lower areas
- g. very impressive
- h. a deep valley with very steep sides of rock that usually has a river running through it
- i. a large area of land that is covered with trees

#### 18 WHAT ABOUT YOU? Write the names of places you know for each of the following natural settings.

- 1. a spectacular place: \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. a mountainous place: \_\_\_\_\_\_
- a canyon: \_\_\_\_\_\_

   an island: \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 4. arristatio.
- 5. an arid place: \_\_\_\_\_



- 1. "I'd like to learn more about the relationships between plants, animals, and the conditions they live in." \_\_\_\_
  - 2. "I help people find alternative ways to heat their homes."





- 3. "I want to make sure that humans don't ruin the earth's clean air and water."
  - 4. "I have a business that sells environmentally-friendly refrigerators and air conditioners."



- a. This person is interested in the environment.
- b. This person is interested in preventing pollution.
- c. This person is interested in renewable energy.
- d. This person is interested in energy efficiency.

Read the article Choose Clean Energy and Help Curb Global Warming on page 118 in the Student's 20 Book again. Check true, false, or no information.



	true	false	no information
<ol> <li>Oil, coal, and natural gas are examples of fossil fuels that increase global warming.</li> </ol>			
2. Taking care of your car tires can help the environment and your budget.			
3. Incandescent light bulbs use less electricity than fluorescent bulbs.			
4. Foods with pesticides are bad for your health.			
<ol><li>Global warming is responsible for extreme changes in the weather.</li></ol>			
Wind and solar power are renewable energy alternatives to fossil fuels.			

- Match the beginning of each sentence on the left with the best ending on the right. Use the information in the Reading on page 118 in the Student's Book.

  1. An increase in CO<sub>2</sub>...

  a. causes flooding.
  - An increase in CO<sub>2</sub>...
     Energy-efficient appliances...
     Compact fluorescent bulbs...
     Recycling...
     Rise in sea levels...
     People can...
     a. causes flooding.
     reduces pollution by 70 to 90%.
     c. contributes to global warming.
     d. take steps to curb global warming.
     e. save electricity.
     f. cut down electricity use by 25%.
  - 22 Read about the Rainforest Flyway Company. Then circle the letter of the answer that best completes each sentence.



## Come "fly" over the rainforest! We'll take your breath away!

Located in Cairns, Australia, Rainforest Flyway is a world leader in ecotourism. We take our guests on a breathtaking "flight" over rainforest trees and straight into the heart of the rainforest for an unforgettable experience.

On the Flyway, you'll experience over 7.5 kilometers of living rainforest while learning about this spectacular place. Did you know that Australia's rainforests are home to over 3,000 different plant species? And some of the trees here are more than 3,000 years old! After this visit you'll understand why it's so important to preserve the rainforests. And you'll see that environmentally responsible travel can be fun, educational, and breathtaking.

Even if you're a world traveler, you've never experienced anything like the Rainforest Flyway. You'll start your unique journey above the rainforest, as you "fly" in a comfortable gondola only a few meters above the trees. Sit back and enjoy the extraordinary scenery. You will be amazed at the breathtakingly rich and lush foliage. And rest assured, there was no damage done to the rainforest ecology during the construction of your gondola. That's why the development of the Flyway took over 40 months to complete!

Your gondola will bring you down into the rainforest itself, where you follow a path to see, hear, and smell the rainforest environment from the ground. Free tours are available several times a day. Tour guides can point out some unusual plants, provide you with interesting facts about rainforest ecology, and answer your questions.

Your Rainforest Flyway experience lasts 90 minutes and ends in the small town of Kuranda, just 25 kilometers northwest of Cairns. Here, you can continue your eco-tour with a visit to the protected areas that 2,000 tropical butterflies call home. You can also buy original arts and crafts made by the people of Kuranda. And if that isn't enough, you can continue on to the wildlife reserves located a short 9 kilometers west of Kuranda to see animals from all parts of the world.

Rainforest Flyway has won numerous awards, including Travel Planet magazine's "Best Ecotourism Destination." Call or visit us online to make your reservations.

	1.	<ul><li>a. some great ecotourism destinatio</li><li>b. tour guides</li></ul>			
	10	c. the ecology of Australia's rainfore	International Committee of the Red Cross have the zize		
	2.				
		c. a type of transportation			
	3.	On this trip, guests into the rai a. don't go b. are lowered	Caspian Sea is the largest lake in the wellseroln Kazakhstan, Turkmenstan, kz		
	4	Rainforest Flyway encourages guests	water lake is Lake Superior, which is located on		
	7.	<ul><li>a. follow a path to explore the rainfo</li><li>b. make a new path in the rainforest</li></ul>			
	5.	Tour quides can	country Italy. Although this fact is debatable, 26		
	ouol	b. make reservations for you	East and is responsible for some of the first introduct. Can you name the tallest mountain in the world? You Everest (8,850 meters tall) in Himalaya Mounta		
	6.	The rainforest has			
		b. 3,000 different types of plants	Mauna Kea, and it's located in Pacific Octoon to its top. But since the bottom or sailfrastuc		
		e. 2,000 amerene types of tropicar t			
23	Re	ad the article again and answer the	high as Mount Everest.  Gulf of Aqaba is in Middle Fa. snoitsaup		
	1.	How long is the Rainforest Flyway to	Eqypt, from		
			e rainforest?		
			Rainforest Flyway?		Э.
	4.	Where is the wildlife reserve?	Bangkok is on / In / of the country of Thailand.		
GR <i>A</i>	ММ	AR BOOSTER and displaced in a second			
٨	-		Senegal is on / in / of the west coast of Africa.		
Α	1.	rrect the capitalization.  T  U  N  the headquarters of the united natio	ons are located in $\frac{N}{n}$ Y $\frac{C}{n}$ of $\frac{1}{n}$		
	2.	the novel dracula, by irish author bra	am stoker, was first published in great britain in 1897.		
	3.	in canada, thanksgiving is celebrated holiday is celebrated on the fourth th	d on the second monday in october. but in the united hursday of november.	state	s, the
	4.	the beginning of the middle ages is greece and rome had fallen, and life	often called the dark ages. by this time the great civilize in europe was very hard.	zatio	ns of
	5.	city of god is a brazilian movie about	life in one part of rio de janeiro. The movie is in portu	igues	se.

D	Co	mplete the sentences. Write the lift's necessary or A if it isn't.			
	1.	Several international organizations, such as the World Health Organization, and			
		International Committee of the Red Cross have their headquarters in Geneva. This city is in the			
		western part of Switzerland on Lake Geneva.			
	2.	Roman Empire reached its most powerful point in the year 116. At this time, much of			
		Europe, Asia, and parts of Africa were under Rome's control.			
	3.	Caspian Sea is the largest lake in the world. It is a saltwater lake that is surrounded by			
		Kazakhstan, Turkmenistan, Iran, Azerbaijan, and Russia. The largest fresh			
		water lake is Lake Superior, which is located on the border between Canada and			
		4. Rainforest Flyway encourages guests to			
	4.	The explorer Marco Polo is often credited with introducing pasta from China to his native			
		country Italy. Although this fact is debatable, it is known that Marco Polo did travel to Far			
		East and is responsible for some of the first introductions of eastern culture to West.			
	5.	Can you name the tallest mountain in the world? You've probably learned that it's Mount			
		Everest (8,850 meters tall) in Himalaya Mountains. The top of this mountain is the highest			
		point on earth. But did you know that there is another mountain that is actually taller? Its name is			
		Mauna Kea, and it's located in Pacific Ocean. This mountain is 9,750 meters tall from its			
		bottom to its top. But since the bottom of this mountain is on the ocean floor, it doesn't reach as			
		high as Mount Everest.			
	6.	Gulf of Aqaba is in Middle East. It separates Sinai Peninsula, which is part of			
		Egypt, from Kingdom of Saudi Arabia Tuol yawyi Isaafala ada alama walione			
C		3. How can you make plans to visit the Rainforest Flyw.			
		Bangkok is on / in / of the country of Thailand.			
	2.	2. Honolulu is on / in / of the island of Oahu on / in / of the state of Hawaii.			
		Which country is north on / in / of Namibia?			
	4.	The Philippines are islands on / in / of the Pacific Ocean, to the north on / in / of Malaysia.			
	5.	Senegal is on / in / of the west coast of Africa.			
	6.	Finland is east on / in / of Sweden and Norway.			
D	C	omplete the sentences in your own way. Use an infinitive or an adjective + an infinitive.			
Arris 3		Your health is too <u>important to ignore a sex add no hatsadalan 21 naiving/lasald shanso ai</u> F			
		Five o'clock in the evening isn't late enough dhuol ed no betardeles si vabilod.			
	3	Designer clothes are too despet and the dearly ages is often called the dark ages both and of the middle ages is often called the dark ages.			
	4.	is a movie that's not good enough and faller and rome had sales a movie that's not good enough.			
	5.	Children at fourteen are too do not one part of no de control of the control of t			
		. These shoes are too			
		isn't big enough			
		is pretty enough			

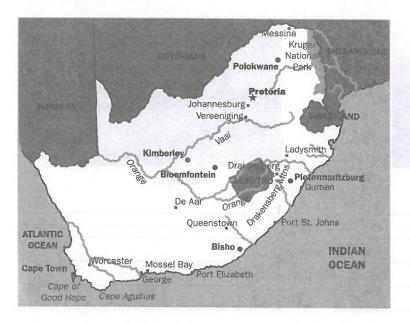
#### E Complete the sentences, using too or enough and the adjective and an infinitive.

1.	The path to the volcano is	if you're not wearing good shoes
	rocky / walk on	" ) od te not wedning good shoes

- 2. The water isn't \_\_\_\_\_\_ because of the sharks.
- 3. The waterfall is \_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_. spectacular / miss
- 4. Tom's daughter is \_\_\_\_\_\_ hiking with us.
- 5. It's \_\_\_\_\_\_ on the path because it's very slippery.
- 6. The waterfall is \_\_\_\_\_\_ to from the beach.
- 7. That cliff is \_\_\_\_\_steep / climb
- 8. The waves are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, but the undertow is dangerous.

#### WRITING BOOSTER

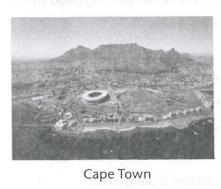
A Look at the map of South Africa. Complete the sentences with the phrases from the box. You will not use all the phrases.



and North Difference	noethene on assign	
he center of	south of	to the north of

- 1. Johannesburg is located \_\_\_\_\_\_ the capital city of Pretoria. ( assign has a dods
- 2. The Indian Ocean is \_\_\_\_\_\_ the Orange River, the longest river in South Africa.
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_South Africa is the country of Namibia.
- 4. Bloemfontein is almost \_\_\_\_\_\_ the country.
- 5. \_\_\_\_\_ are Cape of Good Hope and Cape Agulhas.

B Look at these pictures of South Africa. Write three sentences to describe each place. Use geographic nouns and adjectives and prepositions of place to provide details.





Kruger National Park

1.	 		
7.0	MI		

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3.

1.		
0.00	and the state of t	

2. \_\_\_\_\_



**Drakensberg Mountains** 

1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_



Durban

1. 27 medanesis

2. (A. 18)

3. \_\_\_\_\_

Imagine you are on vacation in South Africa and you are writing a letter about the places you've seen. Choose two places from Exercise B and describe them on a separate sheet of paper. Include the location, descriptions of geographical features, and what a person could do there. Use the map in Exercise A and your sentences in Exercise B. Here is also some additional information about each place you can use.

**66** Cape Town is often very windy.

It can be foggy and slippery in the Drakensberg Mountains. "

Kruger National Park is flat in some places and hilly and mountainous in most parts.

It tends to be extremely humid in Durban.

#### Student Book

Photo Credits: Original photography by Sharon Hoogstraten, David Mager and Libby Ballengee/TSI Graphics. Page 62 (tr) Taurus/Shutterstock, (mr) Africa Studio/Shutterstock, (mr) Just2shutter/Fotolia, (mr) Lucadp/Shutterstock, (br) Les Cunliffe/Fotolia; p. 63 (b) Antonioguillem/Fotolia; p. 64 (b)Vitmark/Fotolia, (bm) paulaphoto/iStock/Thinkstock/Getty Images, (bm) Kaz Chiba/Photographer's Choice/Cetty Images, (br) WaveBreakMedia Ltd/Thinkstock/Getty Images, p. 68 Ambrophoto/Shutterstock; p. 69 Andrey Popov/Shutterstock; p. 74 (Japan) Kate Noble/NobleImages/Alamy, (Korea) Harry Choi/TongRo Images/Alamy, (Mexico) Jeremy Woodhouse/Blend Images/Getty Images, (Brazil) Florian Kopp/ImageBroker/Alamy; p. 76 (moon cake) Psstockfoto/Fotolia, (tl) Carlos Santa Maria/Fotolia, (tm) Patrick Batchelder/Alamy, ml) Partha Pal/Stockbyte/Cetty Images, (br) VanderWolf Images/Fotolia; p. 77 Keren Su/China Span/Alamy; p. 79 (t) ZenShui/James Hardy/Photodisc/Cetty Images, (br) VanderWolf Images/Fotolia; p. 77 Keren Su/China Span/Alamy; p. 79 (t) ZenShui/James Hardy/Photodav Agency RF Collections/Getty Images, (b) Maridav/Fotolia; p. 80 (tr) Erika Kusuma Wardani/Shutterstock, (mi) Hikrn/Fotolia, (br) Veronica Thompson/Paul Thompson Images/Alamy; p. 85 (mi) Alexander Kyriacou/Alamy, (bm) Media Minds/Alamy; p. 86 (wheel) Yio/Fotolia, (Pencililin) Eye35.pix/Alamy, (3-D printer) Alen Gurovic/Alamy, (x-ray) Everett Collection Historical/Alamy, (television) Katrina Brown/Fotolia; p. 89 Alan Bailey/Fotolia; p. 94 (bg) Sebastian Kaulitzki/Hamera/Thinkstock/Cetty Images, (l) Bettmann/Corbis, (r) Les Cunliffe/Fotolia; p. 95 (l) Boyer/Roger Violet/Cetty Images, (l) North Wind Picture Archives/Alamy, (m) AZP Worldwide/Shutterstock, (r) Ivan Chudakov/Shutterstock, (r) Les Cunliffe/Fotolia, (m) Sergio Martinez/Fotolia; p. 103 Radius Images/Alamy, p. 104 Mahesh Patil/Shutterstock, (r) Les Cunliffe/Fotolia, (m) Sergio Martinez/Fotolia; p. 103 Radius Images/Alamy, p. 104 Mahesh Patil/Shutterstock, p. 105 Cobalt8/Shutterstock; p. 109 Phil Boorman/Digita

Illustration Credits: Steve Attoe, pp. 92, 114, 115; Sue Carlson, pp. 110, 112, 113, 120, 121; Mark Collins, p. 92; Andy Meyer, pp. 65, 102; Tom Newsom, pp. 73, 109; Dusan

Text Credit: Page 70: The Five Effective Work Habits courtesy of Yun Siang Long. Reprinted by permission.

#### Workbook

Photo credits: Original photography by David Mager. Page W51 Tim Ridley/Dorling Kindersley; p. W67 lily/Fotolia; p. W70 lily/Fotolia; p. W73 (right) George Doyle/Stockbyte/
Getty Images; p. W77 (top left) Richard Powers/Corbis, (bottom left) amskad/Fotolia, (bottom right) Tony Freeman/PhotoEdit, Inc; p. W84 Jeffrey Coolidge/Getty Images; p. W88 laguna35/
Fotolia; p. W98 pavalena/Shutterstock; p. W104 Michael DeFreitas/V&W/The Image Works; p. W108 (top left) michaeljung/Fotolia, (top right) Karel Gallas/Shutterstock, (bottom left) AfriPics.com/Alamy, (bottom right) Ariane Citron/Fotolia.

Illustration credits: Stephen Attoe: pages W82, W83, W100 (top); Leanne Franson: page W72 (bottom); Brian Hughes: pages W72 (top), W102; Stephen Hutchings: pages W74, W79 (bottom); Suzanne Mogensen: pages W58, W100 (bottom); Dusan Petriçic: pages W62, W79 (top).

#### **ABOUT THE AUTHORS**

#### Joan Saslow

Joan Saslow has taught in a variety of programs in South America and the United States. She is author or coauthor of a number of widely used courses, some of which are Ready to Go, Workplace Plus, Literacy Plus, and Summit. She is also author of English in Context, a series for reading science and technology. Ms. Saslow was the series director of True Colors and True Voices. She has participated in the English Language Specialist Program in the U.S. Department of State's Bureau of Educational and Cultural Affairs.

#### Allen Ascher

Allen Ascher has been a teacher and teacher trainer in China and the United States, as well as academic director of the intensive English program at Hunter College. Mr. Ascher has also been an ELT publisher and was responsible for publication and expansion of numerous well-known courses including True Colors, NorthStar, the Longman TOEFL Preparation Series, and the Longman Academic Writing Series. He is coauthor of Summit, and he wrote the "Teaching Speaking" module of Teacher Development Interactive, an online multimedia teacher-training program.

Ms. Saslow and Mr. Ascher are frequent presenters at professional conferences and have been coauthoring courses for teens, adults, and young adults since 2002.

#### **AUTHORS' ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**

The authors are indebted to these reviewers, who provided extensive and detailed feedback and suggestions for Top Notch, as well as the hundreds of teachers who completed surveys and participated in focus groups.

Manuel Wilson Alvarado Miles, Quito, Ecuador . Shirley Ando, Otemae University, Hyogo, Japan . Vanessa de Andrade, CCBEU Inter Americano, Curitiba, Brazil \* Miguel Arrazola, CBA, Santa Cruz, Bolivia · Mark Barta, Proficiency School of English, São Paulo, Brazil · Edwin Bello, PROULEX, Guadalajara, Mexico · Mary Blum, CBA, Cochabamba, Bolivia · María Elizabeth Boccia, Proficiency School of English, São Paulo, Brazil · Pamela Cristina Borja Baltán, Quito, Ecuador · Eliana Anabel L. Buccia, AMICANA, Mendoza, Argentina · José Humberto Calderón Díaz, CALUSAC, Guatemala City, Guatemala . María Teresa Calienes Csirke, Idiomas Católica, Lima, Peru · Esther María Carbo Morales, Quito, Ecuador · Jorge Washington Cárdenas Castillo, Quito, Ecuador · Eréndira Yadira Carrera Garcia, UVM Chapultepec, Mexico City, Mexico • Viviane de Cássia Santos Carlini, Spectrum Line, Pouso Alegre, Brazil · Centro Colombo Americano, Bogota, Colombia - Guven Ciffci, Fatih University, Istanbul, Turkey • Diego Cisneros, CBA, Tarija, Bolivia . Paul Crook, Meisei University, Tokyo, Japan · Alejandra Díaz Loo, El Cultural, Arequipa, Peru · Jesús G. Díaz Osía, Florida National College, Miami, USA . María Eid Ceneviva, CBA, Bolivia · Amalia Elvira Rodríguez Espinoza De Los Monteros, Guayaquil, Ecuador • María Argelia Estrado Vásquez, CALUSAC, Guatemala City, Guatemata . John Fieldeldy, College of Engineering, Nihon University, Aizuwakamatsu-shi, Japan • Marleni Humbelina Flores Urizar, CALUSAC, Guatemala City, Guatemala · Gonzalo Fortune, CBA, Sucre, Bolivia . Andrea Fredricks, Embassy CES, San Francisco, USA \* Irma Gallegos Peláez, UVM Tlalpan, Mexico City, Mexico \* Alberto Gamarra, CBA, Santa Cruz, Bolivia • Maria Amparo García Peña, ICPNA Cusco, Peru · Amanda Gillis-Furutaka, Kyoto Sangyo University, Kyoto, Japan • Martha Angelina

González Párraga, Guayaquil, Ecuador · Octavio Garduño Ruiz, Business Training Consultant, Mexico City, Mexico \* Ralph Grayson, Idlomas Católica, Lima, Peru · Murat Gultekin, Fatih University, Istanbul, Turkey · Oswaldo Gutlérrez, PROULEX, Guadalajara, Mexico · Ayaka Hashinishi, Otemae University, Hyogo, Japan . Alma Lorena Hernández de Armas, CALUSAC, Guatemala City, Guatemala • Kent Hill, Selgakuin University, Saltama-ken, Japan • Kayoko Hirao, Nichii Gakkan Company, COCO Juku, Japan · Jesse Huang, National Central University, Taoyuan, Talwan · Eric Charles Jones, Seoul University of Technology, Seoul, South Korea · Jun-Chen Kuo, Tajen University, Pingtung , Taiwan • Susan Krieger, Embassy CES, Son Francisco, USA · Ana María de la Torre Ugarte, ICPNA Chiclayo, Peru · Erin Lemaistre, Chung-Ang University, Seoul, South Korea . Eleanor S. Leu, Soochow University, Talpei, Taiwan • Yihui Li (Stella Li), Fooyin University, Kaohsiung, Taiwan . Chin-Fan Lin, Shih Hsin University, Taipei, Taiwan • Linda Lin, Tatung Institute of Technology, Taiwan • Kristen Lindblom, Embassy CES, San Francisco, USA · Patricio David López Logacho, Quito, Ecuador • Diego López Tasara, Idiomas Católica, Lima, Peru · Neil Macleod, Kansai Gaidai University, Osaka, Japan Adriana Marcés, Idiomas Católica, Lima, Peru Robyn McMurray, Pusan National University, Busan, South Korea \* Paula Medina, London Language Institute, London, Canada • Juan Carlos Muñoz, American School Way, Bagota, Colombia • Noriko Mari, Otemae University, Hyogo, Japan • Adrián Esteban Narváez Pacheco, Cuenca, Ecuador · Tim Newfields, Tokyo University Faculty of Economics, Tokyo, Japan · Ana Cristina Ochoa, CCBEU Inter Americano, Curitiba, Brazil • Tania Elizabeth Ortega Santacruz, Cuenca, Ecuador • Martha Patricia Páez, Quito, Ecuador · María de Lourdes Pérez Valdespino, Universidad del Valle

de México, Mexico • Wahrena Elizabeth Pfeister, University of Suwon, Gyeonggi-Do, South Korea \* Wayne Allen Pfeister, University of Suwon, Gyeonggi-Do, South Korea · Andrea Rebonato, CCBEU Inter Americano, Curitiba, Brazil \* Thomas Robb, Kyoto Sangyo University, Kyoto, Japan \* Mehran Sabet, Seigakuin University, Saitamaken, Japan · Majid Safadaran Mosazadeh, ICPNA Chiclayo, Peru . Timothy Samuelson, BridgeEnglish, Denver, USA · Héctor Sánchez, PROULEX, Guadalajara, Mexico • Mónica Alexandra Sánchez Escalante, Quito, Ecuador . Jorge Mauricio Sánchez Montalván, Quito, Universidad Politécnica Salesiana (UPS), Ecuador • Letícia Santos, ICBEU Ibiá, Brazil • Elena Sapp, INTO Oregon State University, Carvallis, USA Robert Sheridan, Otemae University, Hyogo, Japan · John Eric Sherman, Hong Ik University, Seaul, South Korea \* Brooks Slaybaugh, Asia University, Tokyo, Japan . João Vitor Soares, NACC, São Paulo, Brazil - Silvia Solares, CBA, Sucre, Bolivia • Chayawan Sonchaeng, Delaware County Community College, Media, PA . Maria Julia Suárez, CBA, Cochabamba, Bolivia • Elena Sudakova, English Language Center, Kiev, Ukraine Richard Swingle, Kansai Goldai College, Osaka, Japan · Blanca Luz Terrazas Zamora, ICPNA Cusco, Peru · Sandrine Ting, St. John's University, New Taipei City, Taiwan • Christian Juan Torres Medina, Guayaquil, Ecuador • Raquel Torrico, CBA, Sucre, Bolivia · Jessica Ueno, Otemae University, Hyogo, Japan . Ximena Vacaflor C., CBA, Tarija, Bolivia · René Valdivia Pereira, CBA, Santa Cruz, Bolivia · Solange Lopes Vinagre Costa, SENAC, São Paulo, Brazil - Magno Alejandro Vivar Hurtado, Cuenca, Ecuador Dr. Wen-hsien Yang, National Kaohsiung Hospitality College, Kaohsiung, Taiwan • Juan Zárate, El Cultural, Arequipa, Peru

# TOP NOTCH





## THE LEADER IN GLOBAL COMMUNICATION

**Top Notch** develops confident, culturally fluent English speakers who can successfully navigate the social, travel, and business situations that they will encounter in their lives. It delivers immediate, demonstrable results through its proven pedagogy and systematic recycling of language.

**Top Notch** provides more practice and more teacher support than any course available today.

#### **COMPLETE AND FLEXIBLE**

- **ActiveTeach** is a dynamic, customizable multimedia teaching tool. It includes the Student's Book, in digital form, with point-of-use audio, video, flash cards, interactive activities, and lesson plans. With printable resources and assessment.
- Student's Book
- Workbook
- Teacher's Edition and Lesson Planner
- Full-Course Placement Tests
- Assessment Printable from ActiveTeach

